

LET YOURSELF BE INSTRUCTED BY JESUS CHRIST HIMSELF

Very few people know that from 1851 to 1864 Jesus gave a much more complete story of the events that happened during His last 3 years before His crucifixion. A much more complete gospel than what we can find in the Bible. This was revealed by Jesus Christ Himself to a man He choose, namely the Austrian Jakob Lorber who dedicated the last 24 years of his life in the service of our Lord by writing down what He dictated to him through the inner word. He heard the words very clearly in the region of his heart and wrote them faithfully down.

This total work consists of 25 books of 100 chapters each. An enormous valuable spiritual treasure. It is up to each individual to discover and proof the many teachings that Jesus revealed to His disciples.

Revelations that were not intended to reveal to the world at that time but which are now revealed in a very clear way to us.

Book 22

*There is no copyright for this book. This is God's Word and God's Word is free.
It may be copied freely on condition that the text will not be changed.*

*Original German book: "Das grosse Evangelium Johannes" (1851-1864).
This Book 22 is translated from the German books IX 133 to X 18.*

FOREWORD

It was not the intention to make of this book an "intellectual" translation, but rather to translate it as close as possible to the original text given by Jesus Christ.

The words, expressions and even the sentence structure were kept as close as possible to the original without losing its meaning.

This work was made for every simple humble person whose main purpose it is to know the truth.

The translator

(Table of contents on page 281)

1. THE LORD LET THE INDO-JEWS RETURN TO THEIR OWN COUNTRY



AFTER I had finished this speech to the Samaritans, the evening meal, which was already prepared, was put into platters on the table. The 7 temple servants sat at a table that was made ready for them, and the Samaritans at the table that was set for them in the corner of the hall, and then we all partook of the meal that mostly consisted of very well prepared fished, and we drank the wine.

[2] When the meal was finished after 1 hour, and the wine had made the tongues looser, 2 Samaritans came to Me, and they first thanked Me aloud with well chosen words in the name of everyone for the teaching that was given to them. After that, one of them asked Me if they also, as My disciples, would be able to perform signs in My name in case of need.

[3] I said to him: “That will firstly depend on the strength of your faith, and secondly, I have already given to you all the very clear and completely true assurance that everything will be given to you what you will ask the Father in My name. What other assurance can I still give you?”

[4] When the 2 heard that, they bowed deeply before Me and went again to their companions.

[5] After this short discussion after which nothing happened that was of great importance, we went to rest, and we slept until the morning, but this time on good resting beds.

[6] After that, I still spend 7 days in Kis with My disciples. Also the 7 Pharisees stayed with their servants. And besides them, also the Samaritans – and My disciples instructed them completely in My teaching. Only the 4 Indo-Jews left early in the morning again to their country on another way that was much shorter.

[7] To take care that they should not get lost, I awakened beforehand the already strongly developed inner sight of the girl, and said that she should be the guide of the 3, with which they agreed. After the morning meal they left before sunrise after

they first had thanked Me with all their heart for the teaching and for the mercy that was given to them and because they were abundantly provided by Kisjona and also by the 7 temple servants who possessed much gold.

[8] What I then did during those 7 days in Kis I will briefly mention, so that there will be no gaps in the story about My deeds on Earth.

[9] I spend 6 days with Kisjona and Philopold, once in Kane (a border city) in Samaria, then again in Kis, by which opportunity I instructed the people who came to us, and healed various diseases. I also talked about many natural things with My 2 companions, and taught them.

[10] The 7th day I first strengthened the 7 Pharisees and also their servants of which every Pharisee had 7 of them, and send them to Upper-Egypt passing through Tyre where they had to report to Cyrenius in My name. He gave them a covering letter and provided them with a means of transport across the water to Egypt.

[11] When the Pharisees were in this manner easily send on their way, I turned to the Samaritans, whose number was 30, strengthened them and sent them to their own country to open up the eyes and the ears of all those who were still blind and deaf there. And then they left.

[12] When I prepared Myself towards noon in order to travel on, Kisjona, our Philopold and also Mary asked Me to stay until the next morning.

[13] I said: “Love should never be resisted. So although I will not stay with you until tomorrow because before everything else I have to fulfill the will of the One who sent Me into this world, I am willing to stay with you until the afternoon. And thus, friend Kisjona, you still can let prepare a midday meal for us.”

[14] Kisjona did this of course with the greatest pleasure of the world.

[15] We sat at the table, took bread and wine and strengthened ourselves.

2. THE LORD RELATES ABOUT HIS TEMPTATION IN THE DESERT



ow the wise Philopold asked Me: “Lord and Master, full of love, wisdom and power, we have truly heard so many things from Your godly mouth of what You have done. However, about Your first deeds, when You left Your parental house, we know nothing at all. I talked with Mary, the mother of Your body, and also with Joel and Your other physical earthly brothers about Your whole youth. And what I have heard – about Your wonderful arrival on this Earth in the body of Mary until Your 30th year of life – I faithfully wrote down in the Greek language and scripture in a memorial book, without adding or leaving out anything.

[2] So I also – of course in bits and pieces – added everything that I once experienced myself at Your side here, and from what I heard from reliable eye and ear witnesses from many other parts and places, and I wrote it down in a separate book. But from Your 30th year or from the day You left Nazareth until about almost 3 months I was not able to hear from anyone where You were during that very first time and what You have done.

[3] It is true that from the moment that You let Yourself be baptized by John in the river Jordan with water, I know a few things, as well as about the calling of Your first disciples, but – as I said – about the just mentioned very first time I was not able, despite all my efforts, to know one syllable about where You stayed or about Your deeds.

[4] As a quiet describer of Your whole earthly life and deeds it is very important to me that also something is made known to me about Your life and Your deeds during that first time of Your work as Teacher, about which also Your elder disciples can tell nothing. And this can actually be done by no one else except You, o Lord and Master. If it would be convenient for You to reveal to me a few things about this, for me it would mean a great and extremely valuable mercy from You.”

[5] **I** said: “I know your good zeal for Me, and I praise you as a real friend of My heart, but about that first time I really do not like to tell more than what I have already done – *a time* in which I was guided by the Spirit of the Father in Me to a desert at the Jordan, where I fasted for 40 days and nourished Myself by necessity with roots and wild honey, and where I, when My body became very hungry after 40 days of fasting in this way, I was tempted 3 times by an evil spirit, a devil of the first degree. And it would not make a hair’s breadth of difference for the salvation of their soul if men would know more about it.”

[6] **Philopold** said: “But Lord and Master, how could You let Yourself be tempted by an arch-devil, and how was he able to approach You even a little bit? Because between You and a devil there is such a great gap that is set by Your wisdom and might over which an evil spirit can eternally never come across. Who was that extremely daring spirit actually? O Lord and Master, now that You have told me already so much, tell me something more and more precisely about it.”

[7] **I** said: “Although there are no originally created arch-devils as you imagine, but still, everything in the material world is in its original element as if an originally created arch-devil, and therefore it is the same if one says that he is tempted by the world or the material lusts of the flesh, or by this or that arch-devil. And therefore, he who let himself be captured too much by the world and its flesh, his soul is also a personal devil and continues to live after the dead of his body in a constant connection with the evil, still unfermented material spirits, and his striving remains then evil like his love, and he tries to continually satisfy his evil love.

[8] Those kind of devils can of course not come across the immeasurable gap between Me and them, but since I Myself have come now into this world which is full of judgment and thus full of devils, I have, from the deepest depth of My mercy, built a bridge over the mentioned gap by accepting for a certain time a fleshly body, without which bridge no human being of this Earth could ever attain to the true and full blissfulness. So it is obvious

that a devil, just like a man, no matter how evil he is, can approach Me over this bridge and can also tempt Me in his complete blindness and can persecute Me in the most terrible way, although they can accomplish nothing against My might, but can only ruin himself more and more. This you surely will realize.

[9] And look, friend, so it was also possible for a devil to tempt Me during that time you mentioned.

[10] But so that you will know something more about this event, which sounds of course somewhat strange to you, I will tell you briefly the way and manner of the temptation. So listen.

[11] When I had fasted for about 3 weeks in the desert in order to entirely turn away from everything and everyone, and to bring My body in everything more in accordance with Myself than was possible during the time that I, as a carpenter, was often together with My foster father Josef and his sons from his 1st marriage, and when I, living only by roots and wild honey from the desert, became very hungry, and I felt a strong desire in My body to eat bread, the tempter came in the appearance of a serious and worldly wise magician, standing before Me and said: ‘Lord and Master, I know You, and know that You, what concerns Your body, are God’s Son. Why do You torment Yourself with hunger in this miserable desert while all treasures of all the worlds and Heavens are at Your service? But if You do not want to use them, because for the sake of the poor people You also wanted to become a human being to be a shining example of extreme abstinence and soberness – thus in order to make them more equal to You – then You still can make bread out of these many stones here, which You surely can do, while no one can see You here, and just eat until You are completely satisfied.’

[12] But I said very seriously: ‘Listen, you who dare to tempt Me, your Lord from eternity, My body is now also a human being, troubled with the need of every human being in this world, but know and understand that man does not live so much from the bread of this Earth but much more from every word that comes out of the mouth of God. Also for you all, the bridge to pass over to

eternal life would be possible. But you rather should humiliate yourselves now and ask Me to forgive your sins, then you would be helped.’

[13] After My words, the tempter left Me for a few days, as if he wanted to take my admonition at heart and finally conform himself to it. But this was not so. Soon he came again to Me and said: ‘Lord and Master, You know that I am full of pride and lust for power, but I want – now that You are humiliating Yourself in this desert – to learn the right humility from You. So let Yourself be placed now on the highest peak of the temple, which is very easy for us, then I will continue to talk with You.’

[14] I said: ‘I will not allow to be placed there by your powerlessness, but I Myself want it so. And we are already on the spot. And now you can continue to talk.’

[15] When I had said that to the tempter, he said to Me: ‘Lord and Master, if, what concerns Your body, You are really God’s Son, then let Yourself fall down from this height, then God will certainly command His angels to carry You on their mighty hands, so that not one part of the body will be hit by a stone.’

[16] Then I said to the tempter: ‘You should indeed humiliate yourself before Me, your God and Lord, but not I for you by jumping into this deepness. With this you will eternally not accomplish any humility and improvement. This attempt of yours was truly useless, so go away.’

[17] Then the tempter left Me and, carried by My power, I was again instantly in My desert where it was however not so pleasant to live.

[18] But after a few days the tempter appeared once more before Me. And I asked him: ‘What do you want from Me now for the 3rd time, you incorrigible devil?’

[19] The tempter said: ‘Lord and Master, go with me now to a high mountain. There I want to learn humility from You and improve myself.’

[20] And I went with him on a high mountain and said: ‘What do you want here from Me now?’

[21] **The tempter said:** ‘Lord and Master, humiliate Yourself first before Me, after that, I will humiliate myself before You. Look, all these beautiful and rich countries I will give You, if You first will bow down Your knees before me and worship me.’

[22] **Then I said:** ‘Now I have enough of you! Go away from Me now, Satan! For it is written: ‘You shall worship God, Your Lord, only, and serve Him and not tempt Him!’

[23] **Then the tempter left Me forever, and instead of that, legions of angels came from the Heavens to Me, and they served Me.**


[24] **And so I left the desert, took already a few disciples to Me and let Myself be baptized by John in the river Jordan. From then on I took the other disciples, who were mostly fishermen, and traveled with them from one place to another.**

[25] **And now, friend Philopold, you have what was still lacking to you. If My elder disciples want also to write this down, they can do that also.”**

[26] **My Mathew wrote this also down in Kis, because he was more skillful in writing than the other disciples who could write.**

THE LORD IN JESAIRA

3. THE DEPARTURE FROM KIS TO JESAIRA

HEN all this was done fast and easy, the midday meal was also ready. We partook of it and then prepared ourselves immediately for departure. Kisjona, Mary, Joel and Philopold wanted to escort Me unto the place that I intended to visit next.

[2] **I** said: “Then let us go by boat to Jesaira. What must happen there will depend on the free will of the people over there. And now let us depart.”

[3] Upon this, we went to the shore, escorted by all the personnel of Kisjona, stepped into 2 ships, and with a favorable wind, which made it much easier for the rowers, we navigated into the direction of Jesaira, which place we reached after a couple of hours.

[4] **When we came on the shore, Kisjona said to Me:** “O Lord and Master, it seems to me that at this opportunity You lost that one disciple, Judas Iscariot, who is still very worldly inclined. Because when he left he asked You how long You would stay with me, so that he could come back on time, but he did not come. Perhaps he thought that one or the other beneficial money trading was more important than You?”

[5] **I** said: “The latter is the case indeed, but he soon will come after us, for he arrived in Kis almost 1 hour after our departure. He heard whereto we went, hired immediately a ship and will catch up with us here before 1 hour will have passed. But when he comes, then do not pay much attention to him, although he would like to tell you many things. Say to him: ‘Spare yourself from unnecessary talking, because the Lord knows everything.’ Then he soon will become quiet.”

[6] **When I had said that to Kisjona all My disciples became almost unwilling and said:** “But so we will never get rid of that annoying man.”

[7] **I** said: “What I am bearing, you should bear also. In this world there is no other way. The body is for the soul also a big and often oppressive burden, but nevertheless he must bear it, no matter how troublesome it is, especially at a higher age.

[8] Just look at an ever so carefully maintained field of corn, and see if you will not find any weed at all between the corns. As I had to suffer the 1st tempter in the desert – and only when he left Me completely, the angels came to Me and strengthened My body – we must now, until the end of My earthly time, also suffer the 2nd tempter.

[9] I have told you already clearly at a certain occasion that one of you is a devil, and in yourselves you understood who I meant. But nevertheless, for this reason I never said to him that he should go away, because also the devil has his free will, which will not be taken away from him. If he wants to come with us, he is free to do so, but if he wants to stay away, then he also may stay away. However, whether he will leave or stay, we will not look at him with envious eyes.”

[10] All My disciples took these words of Mine at heart, and we went to the village, more precisely to the innkeeper with whom I had already taken accommodation.

[11] When we came near to the house, the innkeeper, his wife and his children saw and recognized us and hurried to meet us with great joy.

[12] When **the innkeeper** had come to Me, he bowed deeply before Me and said: “O good Lord and Master, how often did I ask and desire for You, the greatest salvation of all righteous people, and how often did I have the fervent desire to still in my life, see You, speak to You and accommodate You one more time in my house. But this greatest mercy from You did not want to be my share. How great my happiness is now, now that You finally found me worthy for this mercy, I cannot express with words. But now that You, o beloved Lord and Master, have come to me, You surely will like to spend a few days with me? I gladly will do everything to make Your stay, and for all Your certainly more than

blessed friends, as pleasant as possible.”

[13] **I** said: “Friend, where I find hearts like yours, I like to stay. You can be very sure about that. And if I cannot always stay in a place physically, I still will always stay there with My Spirit with those people who love Me, like you love Me. But today and tomorrow I will also stay physically with you. However, the day after tomorrow, early in the morning, I must travel on, for there are still many people who wait for Me, so that I would help them. But let be prepared now for all of us a very simple evening meal, which however is still not urgent because the sun is still quite far above the horizon.”

[14] After these words of Mine, the innkeeper told his wife immediately what she had to do.

[15] The wife thanked Me for this assignment but still asked Me if she could take Mary immediately into the house with her, whom the woman knew well for already a long time, because she gladly wanted to talk about different things with her, since for already a long time she did not have the joy to see and to speak with the most worthy of mothers.

[16] **I** said: “Dear woman, also the mother *of Mine* has her free will, and I cannot say to her: ‘Do this’ or ‘do that’. If she wants, she certainly can please you with this, because what she does is always well done, and I always have a great pleasure in what she wills and what she does.”

[17] Then the woman went to Mary and asked her to give her this pleasure, and Mary went immediately with the woman into the house and helped her with the preparation of a good evening meal.

[18] But we went to lie down near the shore in the grass and looked how a few fishermen were struggling to catch fish, but could catch almost none into their net.

[19] **Kisjona** saw that also and said to Me: “O Lord and Master, this is precisely how it must have happened to our fishermen 2 days ago, or actually the day before the Sabbath, and yesterday, the day after the Sabbath, until finally Your mercy came to them and filled their nets with fishes.”

[20] **The innkeeper said:** “Dear, old friend, I have seen your fishermen and felt really pity for them. But finally 3 beautiful young men came to the shore, and precisely to that spot, and asked if they could step into a ship. Then a ship that was close to them navigated to the shore, took the young men aboard and navigated then again to the other ships. Then the 3 young men said to the fishermen that they should let sink their nets one more time into the water, and the result was completely miraculous. Now these special young men would be again a desirable appearance for these fishermen. But if the young men navigated with your fishermen to Kis, friend Kisjona, or if they disappeared like a dream, I cannot tell you. Anyway, after the fishing I did not see anyone of them on one or the other ship. I wonder who those 3 young men were.”

[21] **Kisjona said:** “My friend, where the Lord is personally present, also His heavenly servants are not far away, equipped with all power. Those 3 young men were also with me in the house yesterday from early morning until sunset, and they taught the disciples of the Lord in all kinds of things, and also other people who had come to me and who were of good will. However at the same moment, when they suddenly left us in the evening, you certainly must have seen them here how they were helpful to my fishermen with the abundant catch. And it was the Lord who wanted all this to happen this way, because without His will, not one of your hairs can be touched and no sparrow can lift itself up and fly away from the roof.”

[22] **The innkeeper said:** “Now you have spoken according to my heart. When yesterday I told my people at home about the 3 young men, everyone said with almost one voice: ‘If here and there exceptional things come to pass and are happening, then we soon can expect a visit from the Lord. May He give us the mercy to find us worthy for His visit.’ And I finally said: ‘Amen, the will of the Lord be done. May He come, come soon and deliver us from all evil.’ And look, He is now among us.”

[23] **Now the innkeeper began to cry from happiness and could**

not speak for a while. But I strengthened him, after which he recovered his natural peace of mind and could speak again.

4. THE LORD AND THE POOR FISHERMAN



HE pitiful fishermen saw us also, and one of them stepped into a boat, came to us and looked at us in order to know what kind of people we were. When he saw the innkeeper among us, he thought within himself that they were acquaintances of him. He did not inquire any further and wanted to return to the fishermen.

[2] But I said to him: “Friend, come to us completely ashore, then I will tell you something very special.”

[3] Then **the skipper** turned around, hit the firm shore, tied up the boat with a rope to a mooring, stepped with a firm courage towards Me and asked Me: “Good Man, here I am. What kind of special thing You have to tell me? Speak, because I have not much time to wait long, since the day is already coming to an end and we did not catch much fish for the whole day.”

[4] I said: “If you would believe in Me, I could help you and your companions to have an abundant catch. But then you should come to Me tomorrow and follow Me.”

[5] **The fisherman** said: “Good Man, why should I now have to believe in You, and what should I believe from You? Because I cannot remember to have seen You somewhere, and so I do not know who You are. First make Yourself known to me, then I will believe You. But if I will come to You tomorrow and will follow You wherever You will go, that depends not on me but on the one for whose livelihood I must take care. So what is it, what should I believe from You?”

[6] I said: “Have you still not heard anything about that Man who arose in Nazareth and who brings now the eternal Kingdom of God to all men, and who also gives it out of His own power to all those who believe in Him and who want to accept His teaching as a complete pure, living Word from God?”

[7] **The skipper said:** “Good Man, I have heard already many things about the great Savior Jesus of Nazareth, and I also believe in Him, although I still did not see Him anywhere. If You are perhaps the One, then tell me, then I will bow before You and worship You, because with that Savior, God the Lord is as it were visibly united in one person, as I heard from people who came in contact with Him and who also became His disciples.”

[8] **I said:** “If you then believe in Jesus of Nazareth, and that the fullness of God’s Spirit lives bodily in Him, then return comforted to your fishermen and throw your net one more time into the water, and if you then will have an abundant catch, there will be a light within you out of which you easily will be able to determine who I am. Then still today you will come to Me and let yourself be baptized by Me with the Spirit of truth and of life. But do not ask now any further, but do what I have advised you.”

[9] **Then the fisherman bowed before Me, stepped quickly into his boat, navigated skillfully back to his companions who already prepared themselves to gather in their nets, and he told them what I had advised them to do.**

[10] **Then they all shouted aloud, so that we on the shore could hear it:** “Hail to the One who has advised this to you! It is He Himself in whom we believe! What He has advised to you we will do! Hosanna, the high Son of David, who came to save us in the name of the Lord! And now, with *good* luck in His name! Let us throw out the nets!”

[11] **Then they threw out their nets, and within a few moments they were filled with so many fishes that the nets could hardly contain them, and the fishermen, about 20 men, needed more than 1 hour to bring over all the fishes from the nets into the containers.**

[12] **When their work was done, they shouted from joy, and they praised God who really had exalted His name in the Son of David. And with their abundant catch they navigated to their little village that was located nearby the place Jesaira.**

[13] **When they came home with their abundant catch, and their relatives saw the big quantity of fishes with which they came**

home, there was no end to their astonishment. And **the relatives said**: “Listen, you never caught so many fishes – not even in the most favorable time – and most of them are noble fishes. There must have been a miracle that was performed for you by one or the other pious person who is very pleasing to God, like there seem to be many now since the great Savior of Nazareth is traveling around and who teaches with divine power and voice the truth to the people.”

[14] **The fishermen agreed with their relatives and told them how it happened. And also the relatives glorified and praised God, because He had given such a power to a human being.**

[15] **But the fisherman, who before came in a boat ashore to us, said**: “Listen, this Man Jesus of Nazareth is not like a prophet who only can say and do what is given and allowed to Him by God’s Spirit, but He is someone in whom the fullness of God’s Spirit, power and might lives physically, for He does not say like the prophets: ‘The Lord has spoken to me: Open your mouth and tell the people My will and speak so to those who have forgotten Me,’ and do this and that. For our Jesus says: ‘I am the Lord and you are all brothers, and none of you should exalt himself above the other.’ And to the sick ones He says: ‘I want it, be healed’, and then the sick person is healed in one moment. He who was blind, can see sharper than an eagle, and he who was lame, jumps like a deer. And when He says to a dead person: ‘Stand up and walk’, then the dead person rises with a full new life and walks around very cheerfully and with joy.

[16] Look, this and still much more is witnessed now by thousands of people who have seen it with their own eyes and have heard it with their own ears, and that is why I believe that in the Man Jesus of Nazareth lives the fullness of God’s Spirit. But many, many thousands of people take offence that He is a visible Human Being, and they call Him a great prophet from the tribe of David who he himself, in the spirit, called Him his Lord.

[17] But if it is written in the Scripture that God has created man in His image and that Abraham has seen God in the form of a man,

just like Jacob-Israel, then why should anyone be offended now at the full manly form of the Lord Jesus of Nazareth and not completely believe that in Him lives the same Lord who called Moses on Mount Sinai and who gave him the laws for Israel?

[18] But because I completely believe without any doubt that this is indeed the case with Jesus of Nazareth, I will go now without delay on my way and go quickly to Jesaira where He stays personally with the innkeeper whom you all know very well because of his piousness. There I want to know Him still better for the first time personally, and if I come back I will not hide anything from you.”

[19] **Also a few other fishermen said:** “Also we want to know Him personally. And since we have given our word to Him, shouting loudly from the ship, that we will go to Him still tonight instead of very early in the morning, we will go with you to Jesaira. But let us take several of the most beautiful and best noble fishes with us that the innkeeper should prepare for the Lord.”

[20] **That was pleasing to everyone, and after the complete sunset in the first twilight, 12 fishermen – each one of them loaded with 3 fishes – went directly on their way, and they arrived easily and quickly to us in Jesaira.**

5. CONTEMPLATION IN THE EVENING



WHEN they came to us, we were still outside, where we spoke about different things with one another.

[2] **The skipper was the first who walked to Me, bowed deeply and said:** “O Lord and Master, forgive me my great blindness, that I did not recognize You immediately when I wanted to turn around and when You mercifully called me to come ashore. And forgive me also that I came with my companions already this evening and not tomorrow, early in the morning as You told me. And moreover, please do not mind that we poor fishermen have followed the urge of our heart and have taken the liberty to bring along for You only a small offering from the great blessing that

You have visibly given to us with the abundant catch of fishes. See, here are the most valuable fishes of this lake.”

[3] **I** said: “Although I am much more pleased with your hearts than with the fishes that you have brought here for Me as an offering, but where the heart is united with the offering, the offering is also pleasing to Me. Let us therefore eat these fishes together tonight. Give them to the innkeeper, and he will know how they have to be prepared.”

[4] Then the innkeeper called immediately a few of his servants and let the fishes be brought to the kitchen, about which the woman of the innkeeper was extremely surprised. Those 36 fishes were also very welcome to her because she did not have such big and noble fishes in her tanks. Also Mary, who was also working in the kitchen, was very joyful at this completely unexpected gift.

[5] Now we also left the lawn and went to a beautiful, spacious terrace that was located on a little hill at the lake, and from where there was really a splendid view over the lake and also over the surrounding landscape.

[6] Although it was now already quite late in the evening, but this did not matter because since the moon was already for $\frac{3}{4}$ in full light and because there was still some light from the late twilight, the peaceful view could still be called very beautiful. And they all praised the good idea of the innkeeper to let such a beautiful, spacious terrace be built on our little hill.

[7] On this terrace, they all looked at the nature for a while that became more and more quiet, and **the skipper** made the following very good remark about this: “If with man – when he has come into the years of his life about which he says that he does not like them – the evening of his soul would look like this natural evening, then he certainly would be pleased about it. But this is almost never the case, because man spends his old age in all kinds of sorrow, worries, weaknesses, sicknesses and in an ever increasing fear for the certain death of his body. And against this fear, his weak faith and his still weaker hope in a continuance of life of the soul somewhere in the beyond – which is up to now still

not really known – gives him very little certainty. Or man, who can afford it because of his wealth, throws himself especially on his old age with all lust into all kinds of worldly pleasures in order to chase away the fear and fright for death that is troublesome above all to him. And when sicknesses, against which no healing herb can achieve anything, will take him into their grip, and he can very clearly see his coming end, than it storms all the more in his soul. And so the evening of the soul of an old person can be very seldom compared – and in our time almost not at all – with this truly more than beautiful natural evening. O dear Lord and Master, please tell us if it will always be like that with man forever.”

[8] I said: “In order to give man a quiet evening of the soul, I Myself as Lord over life and death have come into this world. The one who believes in Me and always lives and acts according to My teaching, and who thus seeks God’s Kingdom in himself, where he undoubtedly will certainly find it, his soul will have a much more quiet and more splendid evening of life than we can see and feel this natural evening before us now.

[9] Why is the evening of the soul with men often so extremely stormy and miserable? Because men have separated themselves almost completely from God, the original Source of all existence and life and of all light and all truth. And instead of that, they have turned with all their senses and strivings towards the world and its matter that is kept in judgment and death.

[10] If men will just like you turn away completely from the world and return to Me again in full faith and in all love, they will find in Me the quiet and blissful evening of the soul. But without that, the evening of the soul with men in the future will become still more stormy and terrible than anyone has ever experienced and felt until now. Because from now on, men will not be able to say anymore: ‘Who has ever seen God and spoken with Him, and who can guarantee to us the full truth of what is written in the Scripture’, because I Myself as the Lord am speaking now to men, well recognizable and visible to everyone, and I am showing them the truth of life, which is the fundamental truth of all truth. He who

has accepted this in himself, will really have no fear for the death of his body, for he will not see nor feel death, even if he has to die physically 100 times.”

[11] **The really wise skipper** said: “O dear Lord and Master, we thank You from the deepest bottom of our life for this lesson that greatly comforts our hearts. In You we do believe, in You we do hope, and we want to and will also love You above all. But now that I am still talking, please allow me mercifully, o Lord and Master, to bother You with still another question.”

[12] **I** said: “Friend, I surely know what you still want to ask Me, but for the sake of the others, ask your question to Me anyway, but aloud, openly and freely, so that they also will be able to hear and understand what it is about.”

6. CONTACTING GOOD SPIRITS



WHEN the skipper said: “O dear Lord and Master, why is it actually not permitted to souls of deceased people to at least come to their relatives in visible form – especially when these are endangered to be swallowed up by the world – and warn them for the world and let them see the beyond. By that, the belief in the continuance of life of the soul after the death of the body would stay more truthful and firm with people. And in this way it would be based on their own experience, and through such belief, people would also believe more easily and surely in a God whom I suppose cannot at each moment see and speak to each person like we now?”

[2] What is actually the use to proclaim to man a future life of the soul after the death of the body when we cannot really convince him about it?

[3] The priests, who believe very little themselves or mostly nothing at all, have therefore turned to all kinds of deceitful arts for a long time already, to keep the simple, blind people in real superstition, so that they would only work for them and bring them all kinds of offerings, so that they can fatten themselves without

any tiring effort. If someone, who already went to the other side, would always appear to the people and would teach them about the real situation, then the priests would certainly not be able to establish a superstition into the people and maintain it by their deceptions.”

[4] I said: “Friend, that what, in your opinion, you would like to exist, has been always the case with every nation – as long as they lived according to the always faithfully revealed will of God. But when the people let themselves gradually be captured too much by the lusts of the world and their flesh, also their spiritual sight darkened, and the people began to despise, fear and escape the admonitions of the beyond. And so they lost their ability – in an awakened state of mind – to be in contact with the souls who continue to live and work in the big beyond. Only the better people were visited and taught in clear dreams by the blissful inhabitants of the beyond, and this partly for their own personal benefit and partly also for the benefit of other people who were *standing* at the brim of a too deep abyss of destruction, and by that they were mostly saved.

[5] Just go to a really worldly person and tell him that this or that spirit has appeared to you and has told you this or that, do you perhaps think that this worldly person will believe you? O, absolutely not. He will laugh at you and call you a fool and a dumb fanatic.

[6] When on Mount Sinai the laws were given to Moses among all *kinds of* signs of My full presence, the people were dancing in the valley around a golden calf. Why did they not heed Me? Look, the cause was their worldly attitude. Now I Myself am visibly acting in this world – but why does the worldly people not believe in Me? Look, the reason is again their worldly attitude. And that evil attitude drives the priests on, so much so that they persecute Me, yes they even want to grab and kill Me like an ordinary criminal, as they already have tried several times.

[7] Did not an angel appear to Zachariah and to all who were in the temple, visibly and audibly, when Zachariah was offering and

praying in the temple? And for that he was strangled by the worldly Pharisees who are lusting for power. This was also the fate of many wise men and prophets who came to meet the worldly attitude of men with the most lightened truth.

[8] The praiseworthy wish that you expressed in your question has always been permitted, and the simple people of the first times, who were morally still pure and unspoiled, were taught by pure spirits in all things because they were continuously in contact with them. The spirits showed men how they could dig up the metals from the Earth and how they could make all kinds of useful instruments and tools by means of the fire, of which they also learned from the spirits how they had to produce that. Because from whom else could the first men – who, as far as their insight was concerned, were still completely like children – learn it other than from those beings who are filled with wisdom, to whom everything is clear from God’s light in them?

[9] Let those for whom this is not clear just imagine a newly born child who would receive from his parents only physical care but not the least resemblance of education. Not from the parents, neither from anyone else. Although he will grow up, but in using his limbs he will be much dumber than from nature the stupidest animal.

[10] Now imagine a faraway country on this Earth that is inhabited with such people without teaching and education. In 1,000 years they hardly will come to an intellect, and they will not even have another language than the animals in the forests and in the wilderness, as there are such men on Earth in this time, who really exist and who will still exist for a long time as proof for the fact that man without education and learning cannot know nor discover anything out of himself.

[11] But when men possess now all kinds of knowledge and skills, which they learn now of course from each other, then logically it must also be true that they had to be taught – at least in the first basic principles – by higher spirits who have knowledge of all things.

[12] Yes, the first men, who were also called ‘children of God’, were at first taught from the Heavens in everything. But men became aware that they had become wise and intelligent, and because of that, they became vain, arrogant and proud, and because of that, also more and more concentrated on the world, and selfish. They did not need the teaching from the Heavens anymore and were even ashamed of that, and they were hostile against those who reminded them.

[13] They established schools themselves and appointed all kinds of teachers and priests who slowly had more and more only their own worldly benefit in mind instead of the benefit of the people who in their blindness considered them as some kind of gods, and worshipped them, and who are still now very often worshipping them as such.

[14] When this is now happening before the eyes of everyone, and worldly man does not believe anything anymore which is purely spiritual, then is it surprising that the pure spirits are less and less appearing before the worldly minded people? O friend, the permission is still the same as ever, only men are not the same as before, who were in constant contact with the pure spirits from the Heavens.

[15] If men will become again pure and spiritual according to My teaching, then they also will come again into communication and contact with the spirits or souls of people who have left this world. But for worldly minded people such contact can actually have no use because they do not believe in it and they call it foolishness of the one who dares to remind them to the possibility of it.

[16] You yourself had already such visions and appearances, but were they useful to you? You say by yourself: ‘Very little, because I myself did not believe that they were real and true, and considered them just like the other worldly people to be the result of a vivid imagination and a product of my fantasy.’

[17] But if you yourself, who are a rather pure human being, have already this kind of opinion about such occurrences, then what will the opinion be of the totally wrong and throughout worldly

minded people?

[18] So it is completely senseless when such people say: ‘Yes, if for instance my deceased father would come back as a visible spirit and would say to me: ‘Look, it is so and so,’ then I would believe it.’ But now the spirit of his father comes, during the day, or at night in a clear dream, and he teaches his son. The son considers his vision then as a product of his fantasy and often believes even less than before. Then what was it good for and what was the use of that desired appearance of his father from the beyond?

[19] So if the very greatest part of men has to experience now at their departure from this world a very stormy evening of the soul that is mixed with all possible doubts, then no one else is to blame except themselves. If you, friend, have understood this, you certainly will no more ask Me such question.”

[20] After these words they all thanked Me for this true explanation about this, which was easy to understand for everyone.

7. EXPLANATION OF THE LORD ABOUT THE PLANET MARS



WHEN we continued viewing the surroundings, and **our skipper**, who had exceptionally sharp eyes, saw a ship at a certain distance that navigated into our direction, and he asked Me: “O Lord and Master, who can bring that ship so late in the evening to this place?”

[2] **I** said: “It brings one of My disciples. But do not talk much with him when he will be with us, for he also is someone who prefers a pound of yellow earth, which they call gold, then the whole Heaven with the treasures of the spirit and of eternal life.”

[3] The disciples understood Me, as well as our Kisjona and Philopold, but the innkeeper and the 12 fishermen did not quite understand what I meant with that. However, no one asked Me anything further because a servant came now to us to tell us that the evening meal was ready.

[4] We stood up immediately from our seats that were placed on

the terrace, and we went home where the tables with bread, wine and excellently prepared fishes were waiting for us in a very spacious hall. So we went to sit down immediately at the table and partook of the meal.

[5] After we had strengthened us with food and drink, and had talked with each other about all kinds of useful things, in which also Mary was very actively involved, our Judas Iscariot came to us in the hall and excused himself to Me that he had not been able to follow us earlier.

[6] I said: “Your worldly businesses are of no concern to Me. Do you then still not know why I have come into this world? He who adheres to the world and loves it, will soon or later – but always certainly – receive the reward that the world keeps always ready for its friends, and that reward is called: death.

[7] However, My Kingdom is not of this world, and he who adheres to Me will not receive death as reward but eternal life in My Kingdom. My other disciples, except of a few, have also woman and children at home, and still, they stayed with Me for the sake of the Kingdom of God. Then why did you go to your family, as if your concern for them is greater than that for Me? Write this into your worldly heart.”

[8] Although these words of Mine were not so pleasing to the worldly minded disciple, but he nevertheless controlled himself and thanked Me for the admonition. And I said to the innkeeper that he should give him something to eat and to drink at another table. The innkeeper did that immediately, and the disciple sat down and took bread and wine. However, he did not receive any fishes because there were no more available and the disciple had already had his fill with fishes in Kis.

[9] Then we sat very cheerfully at our table, and I Myself instructed the 12 fishermen in My teaching about the Kingdom of God in man and made all this clear and understandable to them from the Scripture.

[10] When I was busy like this for about 2 hours with the 12 fishermen, and had finished My teaching for that day and evening,

a servant came almost out of breath from the house to us in the hall and said: “Dear lords, I was working on the terrace and looked into the direction of the sunrise. There I discovered an extremely big star that stands very close to the horizon. Its light is red like blood, but also so strong that you cannot look at it for a long time. I never saw this kind of star before. What will this star mean? The Lord and Savior of Nazareth, whose wisdom is, as they say, superior to that of Salomon, will certainly know best what that star means.”

[11] **I** said: “My dear friend, you have not been a servant of this house for a long time, since you have not come to know the Lord Savior of Nazareth better yet. But it is also understandable that you still do not know better your Lord Savior of Nazareth because before you were for a longer time a servant of a Pharisee in Capernaum. But where is your star that made you so afraid?”

[12] **Now the servant** said somewhat shyly: “Yes, in that case the lords should come outside for a while, because from this hall you cannot see it because the windows are not directed to the sunrise, but are just towards the other side.”

[13] **I** said: “Then we will go outside for a while to see what kind of star made you so afraid.”

[14] **Then we** walked outside and saw the red, big star in the east at once, which was now standing already higher above the horizon, by which the red color had greatly changed, although the light was exceptionally strong.

[15] **Now I** asked all those who were present and also looked at the star with somewhat anxious eyes: “Now, what do you think about this star? Do you know it or do you not know it? For you, My disciple Andreas, this star should truly not be strange because you are an astronomer.”

[16] **Andreas** said: “Truly, Lord and Master, the constellation wherein it stands I do know, it is the Lion, as this constellation is already called of old, but the star I do not know. The color looks like that of the planet Mars, as it is called by the gentiles, but the size does not correspond with the named planet.”

[17] **I** said: “And still, it is the planet that you just named. That it looks much bigger this year than usual is because it is now positioned the closest to the Earth. The changeable position of all the planets in relation to the sun and also in relation to each other has already been shown and explained to you on suitable occasions many times, and it also was shown to you that the planets can really come close to each other and also draw away from each other depending on how they were in a certain position through their orbit around the sun. And you still do not understand such completely natural phenomena, and by that you even become afraid in your mind, by which fear it very easily can become receptive to all kinds of superstition of the gentiles.

[18] Look, as already said, this planet is now located the closest to the Earth, and also to the sun, for the reasons that have been explained to you. And for this reason it looks quite bigger than when it is located far from the Earth, like every object that is closer by will also express and show itself to be bigger than from a greater distance. Do you understand this now?”

[19] **Andreas** said now: “Lord and Master, now this matter is again completely clear to me, and certainly also to all the others, and from now on we will no more break our head from a fearful mind on such occurrences.

[20] But since this star has brought us outside anyway, I gladly would like to briefly hear from Your mouth how most of the nations that are known to us, have come to believe that this star inflicts war among the nations, especially when it shows itself bigger to the human eye, just like now because of its nearness, for which reason it then also received the name of the pagan god of war, and many gentiles are also considering him to be the god of war himself and therefore also fear him.”

[21] **I** said: “Do you still not know that all those extremely cunning priests of every people – who in their blindness, which is also a work of such priests, consider them servants and friends of the gods – know how to make use of all exceptional phenomena, and namely those at the firmament, to instill great fear

and fright in them, partly through their words and partly through their deceitful arts in order to force them to bring greater offerings and other penances? Look, this also is a work of the priests, and in the course of time, also the kings of the Earth mostly originated from them.

[22] This star, because of its stronger atmosphere as celestial body, has a somewhat redder color than a planet with a less strong atmosphere. And its alternate strong and weak light intensity – but always with a reddish light – brought the priests soon upon the idea to call it a star of war before the people. If it was seen bigger, then coming wars were predicted to the people, and they started to give offerings.

[23] But if here and there among the people there was someone who told the people that the priests only wanted to exploit this opportunity and that the star as such was a completely harmless planet, and the people believed that wise man and brought little or no offerings at all to the priests, then the priests were very skilled to bring about enmities between the nations and let them inflame to war. These were then fought with the greatest bitterness and cruelty. Then the people ran massively to the priests in their temples and offered to the gods to make them milder. When at such malicious opportunities the priests had made a great profit, they tried to make the rulers milder again and the war was soon ended.

[24] If you have understood this now, then you also will perceive how our planet was honored to be considered as the god of the wars. But now we will leave this star alone. We go home and there we will go to rest.”

8. THE COURAGEOUS SKIPPER



WHEN we came into our hall again, the innkeeper asked Me where he could prepare a good resting bed for Me.

[2] But I said: “Look, friend, he who wants to have a bed, give him one, but I will rest tonight on My chair. Your chairs are more suitable to Me for resting than a bed.”

[3] As I took My nightly rest now on My chair, My disciples did also not want any beds, but, like most of the time, they sat on their chairs besides Me. Only Mary and Joel took 2 beds in a side room.

[4] The 12 fishermen returned home again, to their nearby little village, with the intention to bring again fishes in the morning for Me and My disciples, but then a greater quantity, because through My words and teachings they were very well instructed and did not know what to do from sheer gratitude. All the way back unto their little village they shouted loudly from joy over Me, and could not stop speaking to their companions at home about the deep and pure godly truths that they had heard from My mouth. Their companions and relatives asked them if I perhaps also had performed a few signs or wonders.

[5] **The skipper** said: “What signs, what wonders? The word and the teaching of the Lord, which is the eternal, living truth that is full of light from His eternal Heavens, is in itself already the greatest sign and wonder, because before Him no one has ever spoken and taught as He speaks and teaches. Tomorrow I will still learn a lot of things from Him, which are still totally unknown to me, for he who does not become wise at His side and filled with the eternal life of the soul, stays eternally deader than a cement stone.

[6] I will make this now the most important task of my life to proclaim aloud His honor, His divineness and His truly holiest name, because the dumbness and evilness of all worldly men has left me now entirely. Who will stand before me with the lie when I

will throw the truth as a burning thorn bush into his face?¹ Just like before when the shepherd David slung a stone to the proud forehead of the giant Goliath, which threw him to the ground.

[7] Woe to the hypocritical Pharisee who thinks that he can teach me something differently. I will tell and show him, on which step towards Hell he is standing and what kind of reward awaits for him there.”

[8] All his companions were surprised about the courage of the skipper, but said anyway that it would be more clever not to make immediately in the beginning such loud commotion, so that the evil Pharisees would not be made more hostile against the Savior and His disciples as they were already now.

[9] But **the skipper** said: “If in future we still will hold back against the greatest enemies of men and the truth, only out of fear for their evilness, then there never will be light among the people on this Earth. Therefore, with real courage, the truth should openly be thrown in their face, and we only have to really show these cunning cowards our teeth and claws just like a lion, then they soon will crawl back into their dark holes.”

[10] The skipper continued his speech in this way for a while, until he was overtaken by sleep and he allowed himself a short rest. But in the morning he was completely strengthened and the first one to be on his feet. And his first thought was about Me. He glorified and praised Me with all his heart.

[11] When he saw that his companions were still sleeping, he woke them up and said (**the skipper**): “Friends, let us go quickly, so that we can arrive with our fishes still before sunrise, because this day we can receive the eternal life for our souls and also for the souls of still many other people.”

[12] They all stood up quickly from their resting places, went to the fish tanks, took out about 100 of the most beautiful and best fishes and carried them to Jesaira.

[13] This time, also the 8 fishermen who stayed home the evening

¹ See chapter 16:8-9.

before went with them, and helped them to bring the fishes to Jesaira in containers that they put on a cart, which they pulled and pushed themselves.

[14] When they arrived easily and quickly in Jesaira, most of the disciples were still sleeping. Only I, Peter, Andreas, James, John, Kisjona, Philopold and the innkeeper and several of his servants were already on their feet, and outside we looked at the lively scenes of the early morning.

[15] When the fishermen saw Me, they immediately rejoiced and thanked Me already from some distance that I had considered them worthy to see and speak to them also on this day.

[16] When they were completely near to us with their cart, they asked Me once more if I mercifully and pleasingly would like to accept their small offering.

[17] I said to them: “The word that I said to you yesterday at a same circumstance is also valid for today, and from now on into all eternity. Give the fishes to the innkeeper. He will know how to use them.”

[18] Then they gave the fishes to the innkeeper, and the skipper made it clear to the innkeeper that he should not be scanty with the fishes, because their fish tanks were so full with the best kind that they did not have to go out for 100 days for a new catch.

[19] Then the servants of Kisjona took the fishes and brought them to the big guest kitchen where there was a rather big container to keep the fishes, made of cedar wood, which was constructed by My foster father Joseph even before I was born and of which the innkeeper took good care because his father let it be constructed in the year when he died shortly after.

[20] The father of the innkeeper was a pious and very righteous man, and was therefore also an intimate friend of Joseph who had often some good work *to do* with the father of our innkeeper, and he also stayed a friend of the son as long as he lived. That is why the innkeeper was always very fond of My family.

[21] Only Myself they did not know so well in this house, and I was not so much appreciated there because I was always very quiet

and did not step forward.

[22] These things may serve to know this house in Jesaira somewhat better, of which however – nota bene – like many other places at the Lake of Galilee, not a trace can be found anymore for already more than 1,000 years, because the many wars and migrations with which these lands were often afflicted, destroyed and devastated everything. And now back to ourselves.

9. THE NATURE OF THE BEYOND



WHEN the fishes were brought to their spot I went with the former-mentioned friends and with the 20 fishermen to the terrace that we already know, and there we waited for the sunrise. The morning was completely pure and clear because a wind, blowing from the south, blew away the vapors of the lake and also of the surrounding mountains, and therefore, on all sides there was a beautiful view, which was especially praised by our fishermen.

[2] When our **skipper** was completely delighted at the beautiful view of the environment he said: “O Lord and Master, what are all Your works beautiful and wonderful. The one who looks at them with a pure mind must certainly experience much pleasure and joy, and this all the more if he feels in himself that they are never lost for his soul who lives forever. What do You think, o dear Lord and Master, of this opinion of mine, which is maybe still very immature?”

[3] I said: “Your opinion is very good and also true, because a perfect soul who is born again in My Spirit of love and truth will not only not lose anything when his body will fall away – except its heaviness and burden that bounds him to this material world – but will gain unspeakably more by it. For truly I say to you: no physical eye has ever seen, no ear ever heard and no human sense organ has ever felt all the happiness that awaits in the big beyond for those who love Me and live and act according to My teaching. I do not need to tell you more”

[4] Now **the skipper** said again: “O dear Lord and Master, where is actually that big, extremely beautiful beyond, where a perfect soul after the death of his body is taken up? Is it above all the stars, or in the midst of the stars, or in the free airspace where the clouds are floating?”

[5] **I** said: “My friend, you still are asking questions now in a very earthly, human manner, which however can also not be different with you. Look, the most blissful beyond is the true Kingdom of God, which is mainly inwardly in man, actually in the deepest inward part of his soul. From there, it is then also above the stars, everywhere in the endless space, in all directions, thus also in and under the stars, in the free airspace, on and in this Earth, and thus also everywhere, wherever you can think. Because everything that you see and feel on this world is also present in a similar way in the spiritual world, without which nothing material would exist nor could exist.

[6] Because look, this Earth, the moon, the sun and all those numberless stars, which are also merely big celestial bodies, and where just like on this Earth, all kinds of beings and creatures are living, are in fact also only purely spiritual, because they are only, by God’s will, fixed expressions of His thoughts, ideas and visions in Himself. If God would push out such an idea outside the reach of His will and would not want to keep it fixed in His vision, then it also would not be there – which God is able to do if He would want that in His eternal order. But God wants that everything, just like He Himself, will exist forever, even though under many changings which are determined by God in such a way that everything will change from the first condition, in which all matter exists that are fixed by God’s will, into a free and as it were independent condition which is spiritual and divine.

[7] When you will be perfected in the Spirit of God in your soul, you will be able to vision and use everything in yourself on a small scale what God has in Himself in the most endless measure. And then you will see and understand – indescribably much more clearly than now with your obscure and imperfect sense organs –

the Earth as it is now and as it was in all former periods of existence and as it will be in the future periods until its material end, and after that, eternally further in its unchangeable spiritual and purest state. And also the moon, the sun and all those endlessly many other celestial bodies from the smallest to the greatest. That is why the sense organs were given to man in an obscure and imperfect form, to make it necessary for him to continuously think and search inwardly, because for the soul, who is related to the original light of God, there is nothing more disturbing and unbearable than the obscurity and unclearness of everything that he can only perceive with his obscure and imperfect sense organs of the body and of which he hardly can distinguish the outer layer.

[8] So the soul wants continuously to know the full truth, and thinks and asks and seeks then also unceasingly. And this activity of the soul results in a continuous increase of the awakening and strengthening of the inner spiritual ability regarding the seeing, hearing and observing, as well as the feeling and experiencing.

[9] If the soul would come directly in this world with a completely awakened inner awareness, he would immediately fall back into the greatest possible laziness and passivity, which would mean the same as if he would possess no life.

[10] But life's happiness consists most of all of activity, and so it is more useful for the soul to exercise himself in all kinds of activities instead of being continuously in a condition in which he can very clearly observe the inner life in all directions.

[11] If you well think about all this, you will by that already attain to a great clearness in yourself and understand many things which you were not able to understand up to now.”

10. THE ACTIVITY OF THE SOUL



PON that, another fisherman said: “O Lord and Master, You said that when a soul enters into this world it would not be useful to him to possess directly a complete inner clearness, because – and this we very well can understand now – he would fall back into great laziness and complete passivity, for when someone has lost something valuable, he will certainly search for it as long as he will perhaps find it again. And in this way the soul seeks the clear inner light that was lost by his obscure outer sense organs. But when he has found that greatest treasure of life again, what will happen to his further activity? Because when man has fortunately found back that which he had lost, then his seeking, and thus his activity, will cease. When a soul has found again completely that which he sought by his active seeking, then most probably he will fall back again into complete laziness and passivity. But in that case, he would be as it were dead again, and that would in no way be beneficial for his blissfulness. In this respect, o Lord and Master, it is still not completely clear to me.”

[2] **I said:** “Friend, since the true blissfulness of life does not consist of clear visioning and understanding, but only of the activity of love that should increase more and more, every soul should first make this his only life’s element, for he otherwise can never attain to the inner clearness of life, because the activity of love is an inner fire of life, which must become a bright light-giving flame by its increasing activity.

[3] **However,** when this life’s element in the soul is completely awakened, in such a way that the soul himself becomes this life’s element – which means to say that the whole man is born anew and thus born again in the spirit – then the soul stays also active in the highest possible degree, despite his inner clearness which is a result of the activity of love that has raised to the highest possible level. And his blissfulness and clearness will increase according to the degree of his activity of love and not according to the degree of his clearness, to which at no time he can attain without the activity

of love, because God has determined since eternity that no spirit and no human soul can ever attain to the light without the corresponding activity.

[4] How do people in this material world make light? Look, they rub wood against wood or stone against stone, just as long as fire sparks will come off. The fire sparks fall on lightly inflammable material that maintain the glow. Once that glow is sufficiently present, and inflammable objects come in contact with it – like wood, straw or a certain lightly inflammable resin mixed with sulfur and naphtha – then soon a bright flame will flare up and it will become light in himself and around him into all directions.

[5] Could there ever have been any glow without that preceding activity, and from that, a shining flame which shows the highest degree of activity itself through its visible active movement?

[6] Look, in this way, already the dead material world shows, that in order to make fire and light a certain activity must precede. Thus, to the light of the soul's life must all the more precede a certain activity. By this, love will be awakened, which is the life element, and only from then on, the light of the soul will exist from its increased activity, and this is the wisdom, which recognizes, evaluates and orders itself and all things out of itself.

[7] Look, friend, this is how things are concerning the life of the soul and his inner clear ability to recognize himself, and so you should not be afraid that a blessed soul will ever become lazy and passive as a result of his divine wisdom, because the wisdom of a soul here, and still more in the beyond, will always be the result of his activity. If this would or could cease, then with the soul, also his wisdom and his inner clearness of life would cease. Did you understand this now?"

11. THE ACTIVITY OF THE SPIRITS



HE fisherman said: “Yes, Lord and Master, it is now completely clear to me, but now I moreover would like to know of what actually does the activity of a perfect soul in the big beyond mainly consist. On this hard Earth there are of course for men many thousands of different things to do if he wants to stay alive, but then what has to be done in the big spiritual beyond? Do they also plow, sow and reap there for the sake of their livelihood?”

[2] **I said:** “O yes, friend, plowing, sowing and reaping, but of course in a different manner and in a different sense from what happens in this material world.

[3] Look, without the great activity of the spirits, namely of the perfect spirits, nothing on any globe would exist. Not only nothing would grow and no living being would walk on the face of the Earth, but also there would have never been a sun or globe that would have existed, and would certainly not continue to exist.

[4] Although men plow the soil and straw the seed in its furrows, but it is for the spirits to accomplish the germination, the growing and the ripening of the fruit. From this, you surely will understand that namely for the perfect spirits there is a lot of work and a lot to do for your visible world here on this Earth, as well as on all the other celestial bodies. And even more for the sake of the right development of the soul and the perfection of men, already on this side, and still much more after that on the other side¹, because there are always much more, often extremely imperfect souls coming to the big beyond than perfect ones, especially from this Earth. The imperfect, bad souls would soon spoil this whole Earth with the help of the unfermented nature spirits, so much so that no grass, no bush, no tree would grow on it, and no animal and no human being would be able to exist anymore.

[5] Only through the love, the wisdom and the might of the perfect

¹ The beyond.

spirits, the bad, imperfect souls on the other side are hindered in this, they are continually and progressively developed, and if possible they are also brought closer, step by step, to the Kingdom of God.


[6] How the perfect spirits can accomplish all that, can however not be expressed into words, but when you yourselves will be born anew and reborn, it will be clear and understandable to you how the spirits are working and accomplishing things. Did you also understand that?"

[7] Now **the same fisherman** said again: "Yes, dear Lord and Master, and I thank You for Your extremely great patience with us weak and still very stupid men. O, it certainly will still take a long time before we, who are living among sheer wonders, will understand these wonders. We see and enjoy the water and do not know in the least what it is. So we also see the fire and its light and feel the glow and its warmth, but do not know in the least what it is or its actual cause of existence. But no matter how, we are now already extremely glad and cheerful because we have received the infallible way to the full and living truth by Your extremely great mercy and love. O dear Lord and Master, help us also with Your mercy, so that we will never become tired, weak and lazy by walking this road unto the lightening goal."

[8] **I** said: "He who believes and who has the right will, will also reach that to which he seriously strives for. And also you will soon and easily reach the goal, since at My side you zealously have already gone halfway the road."

[9] When I had satisfied the fishermen completely with My teaching, they thanked Me again, withdrew and talked among each other about what they had heard, and they imprinted it firmly into their memory.

12. THE MEANING OF THE PREDICTIONS OF THE LORD

UT I talked with our innkeeper, Philopold and Kisjona about many things, and also about the future of the whole Jewish country.

[2] When **the disciples** heard Me talking about the dark future of the country, they said among themselves: “Sometimes you really do not know what to think about Him. We do not want to say anything against His parables in which there is always a deeper spiritual basic meaning and which He always explained to us when we did not understand them, but when in His teaching – which has to be established among the people in already 10 years time, and which can and will change people into lambs – He always speaks about a future that is still more miserable than the present time, then one does often not know what to think about it.

[3] Besides, He also said repeatedly that without God’s will, not even one hair can be touched and not one sparrow can fall off the roof. If nothing can happen without His will, then surely there can be no miserable future without His will. And even the less when – as already said – men must be changed into lambs by His teaching, which is an active Word of God and which is talking about nothing as often and penetrating than about the love for God and fellowman, and also about humility, reconciliation, self-denial and mercy.

[4] If men must indeed become like that, as – to our best knowledge –several thousands of people became like that in a short time, then how can He always make predictions about a future that is still more miserable than no matter what time in the past and in this already extremely miserable present time now? Who can understand that? We absolutely do not understand it.

[5] I suppose that He wants to have it that way for one or the other secret reason that is only known to Him. Otherwise we completely cannot understand how He can make such predictions about an extremely miserable future that is the result of His

teaching, which now at the time that it exists far in Asia, even among the Mores far in Egypt and which is also spread already in Europe among the Romans and the Greeks among many thousands of people who really believe in Him and who can always confirm its lightening truth through signs.

[6] Yes, if these extreme conditions in the future that are predicted by Him must be the result of the pure divine teaching, and the Kingdom of God will take on such lamentable form among the people, then it surely will be much better not to proclaim such teaching at all among the people, so that they will not become even worse devils than they are already for the greatest part now.”

[7] I did of course hear all those remarks from My disciples and said to them: “How can you still be offended at My predictions about the future? Did I not announce them to you already several times and have also completely truthfully shown to you what, because of the free will of men, the cause of the extremely bad future will be. And you well grasped, realized and understood it, and were not offended. Then why were you irritated now because of that, and how can you say that the future, when My gospel will be known, can only become as bad as I want it, for a reason that is only known to Me?

[8] Oh, oh, how very shortsighted you still are all of you. Indeed, without My will not one hair on the head of man can be touched, no sparrow can fall off the roof and no one can change the size and form of his body, or make the day longer or shorter, for all these things are directly under the power of My will, which is also one and the same in all of the numberless many angels of My eternal and endless Heavens. But here on this globe, where everyone must first go through the test of the freedom of his will, it is quite different concerning the almightiness of My will in the moral and mental sphere of life of man, as I have shown you already oftentimes.

[9] And did I not say: in a world where man cannot become one of the worst devils, he also cannot become a true child of God? That is why I Myself reveal now directly My will to you men, so

that you will make it as your own and become in everything completely like I am.

[10] And if this is now so, and can impossibly be otherwise – which you basically should clearly realize now – then how can you be offended when I also announce to these our friends what it will look like in the future as a result of the hardness and blindness of men who just like the many Pharisees do not want to turn to the light of life, but persecute it with all the anger of Hell?

[11] We have truly spread now the teaching of the Kingdom of God far and wide, from sunrise to sunset and from noon to midnight among many people, and many are already sunning themselves in the light from the Heavens, but still, this first spreading is still very small and is the property of only small families and communities. That is why it does not stir up too great sensation with all those many worldly mighty and above all imperious enemies of the light. And until now they did not undertake so many things against it.

[12] But just let the light be more widely spread, so that the priests can notice that their temples are no more filled with people on certain feast days and great offering days, but become more and more empty, then you will see with what kind of nameless anger they will rise against My teaching and its followers.

[13] Although My teaching is in itself the true peace of a soul who lives and acts according to it – yes, it is the blissful peace of Heaven in the whole man – but for the devils of Hell who, in human form on this Earth, will storm among the people with lies and cheating, it is a double-edged and flaming sword, a war and a great destruction. That is why the Kingdom of God on Earth will suffer great force, as this is already partly happening now, and those who want to have it, will also have to pull it to themselves with force.

[14] And look, the struggle that is predicted by Me because of the preservation of the free will of man, which is the arm of their love and thus of their life, is inevitable, because we do not first want to wipe away the people – who are wrong and evil and whose

number is extremely great – from the face of the Earth by a flood for the sake of the teaching from the Heavens, since this teaching is actually given for the sake of those who are sick, the deaf and the blind, and those who are troubled with all kinds of afflictions, and not for the sake of those who are healthy. Then it can be easily understood that in time great battles and wars will spread over the face of the Earth, and mainly and firstly over the old kingdom of the Jews, out of which the teaching goes forth, and this with such great devastations that one will not be able to recognize anymore where one or the other city was located, where the vineyards, the fruitful lands and rich fruit orchards, pastures and fields have been. It will be changed into a desert and will never be transformed again into the Promised Land where once the honey and the milk were flowing.

[15] The fact that I am telling you beforehand has its reason: that you can prepare and arm yourselves against it on time. Because when you know when the thief is coming, it is easy to resist him, but if you do not know whether he will come, and when and how, during the day or at night when everyone is in deep sleep, then it is easy for the thief to come into the house and to take his loot. Therefore, walk always in the light of the inner day, and stay awake in My truth that is revealed to you, then you will be able to withstand the struggle with the enemy.

[16] Are you now still full of offense, now that I have shown this to you as clear as the sunlight?"

13. THE HUMILITY OF THE WORKERS IN THE VINEYARD OF THE LORD



Now Peter said: “O lord and Master, we were actually not offended just now, and we will even be less offended since we realize now that we can never prevent what You, in all Your almightiness, do not want and wish to prevent. And what can still be done with Your continuous help, will also happen, for we always want to offer our life against the enemies of

the truth. And before I fall, then, in case of need, 1,000 enemies of the truth and the life will fall. For we do not only want to be teachers in Your name, but also heroes, and with the word and the sword we want to fight against the adversaries and enemies of the truth. With Your name in our heart, and as our shield, we will conquer the whole world. But never leave us with Your mercy.”

[2] **I said: “If you stay in Me, I will also stay in you. However, without Me you can do nothing.**

[3] **And if you are with Me, and have done everything in My name, then say in yourselves: ‘Look, o Lord, how we, while working in Your vineyard, are still standing before You as lazy and useless helpers.’ For truly: he who exalts himself, will be humiliated, but he who humiliates himself, will be exalted.**

[4] **Besides, you will call no one ‘Lord’, for only one is your Lord and Master, and this is I. Also, you will call no one ‘Father’, for only one is your Father, namely He who lives in Heaven. So you also should call no one good and holy, for only God is good and holy.**

[5] **You are all brothers and sisters among each other. The one among you, who wants to be the first and the most important, should be the helper and servant of all. For in My Kingdom, the most humble, the minor and apparently the least, is actually the most important and the greatest in all wisdom and power.**

[6] **Now you know what you should do and what you always have to heed in order to keep Me and My power and might in yourselves and work with it. Do it always in this way, then you will also stay in Me and I in you.”**

[7] **Now our skipper came to Me and said: “O, dear Lord and Master, You said that one should not call anyone ‘father’, because only God is the Father of all men. I can indeed see that You are completely right. Only, I do not know how I should understand what is written in the law of Moses and how it can be explained when Moses says: ‘Honor your father and mother, so that you will live long and that it will go well with you on Earth.’ Here Moses,**

the great and mighty prophet of Jehovah, calls the one who begets children, 'father'. And there is also: 'our father Abraham, Isaac and Jacob'. Now if we as children call our begetter 'father', are we then committing a sin against You, according to what You have said, o Lord?"

[8] **I** said: "The word in itself is not important, but only its inner meaning. Therefore, children can without any problem call their begetter 'father', and the one who gave birth to them 'mother', because children cannot grasp the spirit of the word. But you can grasp now the inner spirit of the word, and know that the eternal supreme, pure love in My heart for you men, whom I educate to become My children and am eternally exalting them, is the only true Father. Thus, friend, understand well, only in this spiritual sense of the word you should call no one 'Father'.

[9] Remember also, that every pure outer word, as well as a letter, is in itself dead and can awaken no one. Only the inner spirit in the word – whether it is spoken out or written down in letters – makes everyone alive who thinks, acts and lives according to its inner, living meaning. However, the one who only believes, acts and lives according to the outer meaning of the word, like the Pharisees, remains dead, like also the letter of the word in itself is dead. This to reassure you."

[10] The fishermen and all the others thanked Me for this explanation that I added, and they thought deeply about everything I had said and explained to them here this morning still before sunrise.

[11] As the sun rose now with a strong red color above the horizon, surrounded by rose light little clouds, which was a beautiful view, **the innkeeper** said: "Although such morning is a nice and beautiful view, it is a pity that after such rose colored morning there is almost never a rose colored evening that follows. Already of old it is said: 'Roses in the morning, dirt in the evening'. Lord and Master, will these morning roses bring us dirt this evening?"

[12] **I** said: "As long as I am among you, you can leave out the old

sayings of the astrologers, although they are indeed confirmed here and there, because the One who is Lord of the morning, is also Lord of the evening. If you have understood this, you do not have to be afraid for the dirt of the evening.”

[13] When I had said that to him, he became glad, for he was never a friend of dirty evenings.

14. THE LORD VISITS THE POOR FISHERMEN OF THE BAY



MESSENGER came now from the house to tell us that the morning meal was waiting for us. Then we left the terrace and went immediately inside. There we sat at the table in the order that is already known, and the 20 fishermen sat at the table that was set for them. And, strengthened by the beautiful morning, we partook very cheerfully of the extremely well prepared morning meal.

[2] When we had finished the meal after ½ hour, the innkeeper asked Me what I would do until noon.

[3] I said: “It is free to ask, but also to answer. Although it is not always in My order to determine beforehand what I will do, for it all depends on the One who lives in Me, and I, who am now also only a man of flesh and blood, having an immortal soul, have to listen to that Spirit in Me. Only after He has said to Me: ‘Go here or there, do this or that’, then also My flesh and blood will know it. But this time the Father has already spoken to Me, and I know what I should do, and so I also can tell you.

[4] Look, not far from here, in the direction of Caesarea Philippi, this Lake of Galilee has one of its largest bays, through which however a big ship can hardly navigate. But smaller boats can reach its rather widely extended shores, which you do not know yet. On those shores is located a small fishing village, leaning against a steep mountain, and its Greek inhabitants feed themselves mostly with fishes and with the milk of a few goats. They always sell the possible surplus of their fishes in Caesarea Philippi, and in return for that, they take salt, bread and a few tools

which they need for their little housekeeping and for their work.
[5] I had already visited these fishermen before when they still were in a poor spiritual and physical condition, because spiritually they still belonged to the school of the Greek so-called ‘worldly wise dogs’¹, and physically they inhabited the most miserable huts that they built on the bare rocks of the mountain. When I visited them, I greatly lifted them up from what concerns their physical condition, but especially from their spiritual sphere.

[6] And look, those fishermen, whom I am describing to you now, are the ones we are going to visit. So provide us with a number of small and light boats with which we can navigate into the bay. In 1 hour and a little more we can easily reach the mentioned village. If you wish, then see to it that we quickly can sail off. You will have great joy about those fishermen whom you still do not know up to now. A couple of hours after noon we will be back here again in Jesaira.”

[7] When I had said that to the innkeeper, **Kisjona** said to Me: “Lord and Master, 3 good ships of mine are laying in the port. Can we not use those, to spare our innkeeper the trouble to gather the right number of small boats with his neighbors, since he is not enough provided with seaworthy boats?”

[8] **I** said: “Friend, where the lake is deep we can use your ships anyway, but when we come to the shallow bay that is fully grown with much reeds and reed pipes, your ships cannot anymore give us the service that we want.”

[9] **Kisjona** said: “Also to each of my ships there are 4 little boats hanging, which can be used if necessary. Besides, my faith in You and Your power is so strong that I cannot have the least of doubt that in Your presence we can navigate into the shallow bay with my ships.”

[10] **I** said: “Yes, if the faith of you all is such, then we can try the short sea trip with your ships.”

[11] After I had said that, we all stood up and went immediately to

¹ The cynics.

Kisjona's ships, and he gave instructions to his present skippers as to what they had to do. When they heard that they had to sail into the bay with the reed, they shrugged their shoulders, indicating that it would not succeed.

[12] Nevertheless, we stepped into the 3 ships and sailed off quickly. Mary stayed in Jesaira because she heard that we would be back a couple of hours after noon, and she discussed about many things with the woman of the innkeeper who was a close relative of the first woman of Joseph.

[13] Already after ½ hour we reached the fatal bay, and **the skippers** said: "Now we must retract the rudder and take the pushing sticks."

[14] **Kisjona** said: "Listen, the Lord is close to us and He is with us. Do what He will tell you, for His power can do more than your pushing sticks."

[15] When the skippers heard this from Kisjona, they turned to Me and asked Me what they should do now.

[16] And **I** said: "Then turn the rudder to the back, then we will see if a good wind will push us through the reed."

[17] Then the skippers did what I had instructed them to do, and very suddenly a hard wind came from the east that made high waves in the bay and blew with these waves also our ships very fast over and through the reed into the bay. In this way we reached quickly and easily our place of destination. And they all admired the charm of the little village as it looked like during that time, and which was only known to Me and My old disciples. We went ashore at once and looked for the inhabitants.

[18] When we came at the first house, there was nobody home. And this was also the case with the other houses. They were closed off, and there was no one in a house or in a goat's stable.

[19] Then **several disciples** said among each other: "He knows the most secret thoughts of man, and already several times He precisely predicted the far future for us and many other people. Then why did He not know this time that the inhabitants of this little village are not at home? Strange, really strange. If He really

did not know it, He could have saved us and Himself this sea trip. But if He knew, and He only made this trip to test our faith, then He should know that we all believe doubtlessly in Him, and are on His side, otherwise we would not have followed Him everywhere for almost 2 ½ years. Then why is a new testing of our faith good for?”

[20] **Also our Kisjona asked Me:** “Lord and Master, what are we doing now in this little village that is maybe since long deserted by the inhabitants? Let us step into our ships again and sail back to Jesaira. For what must we do here?”

[21] **I said:** “You are all still somewhat of little faith. If I would not have known that all the inhabitants of this little village are only at home today, then I also would not have searched for them in vain. Because yesterday they had a good catch with the help of My will, which they did not know, and they want to bring part of the fishes to the market in Caesarea Philippi, the city that has rather well recovered itself again. But they are home and we also would have met them in their houses, but when they saw our ships, they all hastily well hid themselves out of fear in the wood towards midnight¹, because they were convinced that they had been discovered and betrayed by someone, and that now ships of Herod were coming to bring them to ruin.

[22] There behind a rock they have placed a guard with sharp eyes, and he already saw that we are neither from Herod nor are Pharisees. And those guards are already leaving their place now and they soon will come close enough to us to convince themselves with more certainty as to who we are. After that, they will tell the hidden inhabitants of this little village that we are no enemies, and then the inhabitants will soon be with us and express their very great joy because I visited them.”

¹ To the north.

15. THE FISHERMEN GREET THE LORD

IT soon happened as I had predicted. It did not take long before they all came out of their hiding place, and I called them with a loud voice to come to Me.

[2] **They all** recognized My voice immediately and shouted: “That is the great Savior of Nazareth, filled with all the power of Jehovah. Let us go quickly to Him.”

[3] They came rushing to us and greeted Me with solemn, kind words, which were also united with their heart. And they thanked Me for all the good deeds which they greatly enjoyed, and were still enjoying since My first visit. Then they asked Me to continue to remember them and their children, which I also promised to them, as long as they would faithfully and actively persevere in My teaching.

[4] Then they took us to their habitations and let us see its very useful arrangement, as well as their fishing tools, their storerooms for the fishes, and also their flocks, consisting of goats and sheep. They also raised chickens and ducks and geese. And as they were originally Greeks, they liked the 2 last-named kinds of fowl very much. They also showed us their very big beehives that gave them much good honey, which could easily be sold for much money in Caesarea Philippi. In short, this little people, who were formerly spiritually and physically extremely poor, improved themselves in a time of about 1 ½ year, in such a way that they were now quite wealthy.

[5] One of the inhabitants was a smith who knew how to make all kinds of useful and practical tools from iron and also from other metals. He also offered these tools for sale during the already mentioned opportunity, except for a few spears and lances, which were left with this little people at My first visit. Kisjona bought these weapons for 1 pound of gold, together with still several kinds of other tools, which he could well use for his big business.

[6] Kisjona asked the leader of this small community to visit him in Kis where they would talk about and settle a few things

with each other for the benefit of this little village. The leader promised to do that, and he also did it soon after he returned from Jesaira, which he came to know now for the first time, because the innkeeper invited him to sail with us *to Jesaira*. Also our innkeeper bought different kinds of tools here from the smith.

[7] When the leader had briefly described to Kisjona, Philopold and the innkeeper what this region looked like before My first arrival and how it flourished suddenly by My word, it was especially the innkeeper who was surprised, to whom this seemed more unusual than to the 2 first mentioned ones who had seen already greater signs of Me.

[8] Then the inhabitants wanted to treat us with all kinds of things, but I said to them: “My dear friends, this is not the reason why we came here, and we will soon leave and go back again, for I still have to settle a number of things in Jesaira. However, I have come to you now with My disciples and friends because you faithfully kept My teaching and have become true gems of My will.

[9] Since you became that way, it was also time to let you know other people who should learn from you and acquire your true firmness of faith. And since you are also good speakers, you may from now on at certain opportunities speak with other people about Me and My Kingdom on Earth and show them the way of life.

[10] He who will live according to My teaching and will act like you, and who does not say and think within himself: ‘Look, this time the Lord has spoken again completely like a simple man, and not much of the Kingdom of God can be discovered in this,’ will also attain to that to which you have already attained, and he will be able to say, just like you: ‘Now I do not live anymore, but the Lord lives in me.’

[11] So remain faithful to Me, also in your descendants, then I will stay in you. Do in My name what I have advised you to do now, at a right opportunity that you very easily and soon will recognize. But do not throw My pearls to the pigs of pure worldly people.

[12] But tell Me now, leader of this small, but for Me still great

community, why you actually hid yourselves in the bushes of that wood when you saw our 3 ships navigating into the bay. Did you then not think about the power that was given to you by Me as a result of your unwavering faith?"

[13] **The leader** said: "O Lord and Master full of God's supreme might and power, look, that was very strange. Already several times since You were here, big and smaller ships have tried to navigate into this bay that is always richly provided with fish and grown with reeds and reed pipes, but no one succeeded to penetrate even a hand's breadth over the borderline of reeds, for with the might of Your living word and will we drove them all directly far back into the lake. But this time Your word and will in our heart did not help us, for the reason that I very well understand now.

[14] When we saw these 3 ships, we immediately forbade them in Your name to navigate into this bay, but the ships did not stop, but penetrated unstopably ever deeper into our bay. Then we all became really afraid, and we could do nothing else except to flee and to hide us in the bushes of the wood and in the big hole, that has an entrance behind the wood which can hardly be noticed and which is so spacious inside that easily many thousands of people can stay there.

[15] Nevertheless, we put out a guard who had to tell us who would come to land from the 3 ships, who did not want to obey to the power of Your word and will in us, and what they would do. But the guard announced to us soon that those who had come to land were no Romans or subjects of Herod, but a group of friendly looking people, consisting of Jews and Greeks, and who did not try to force into our houses.

[16] After that message we felt lighter in our heart, and we advised the guard to convince himself more closely as to who those men were who had come to land. We received an even better message. Only after that, we dared to come into the light. We then heard Your call, which we know well, and hurried to You, the Father and Lord of all existence and life.

[17] Now it became of course clear to us why the 3 ships did not want to obey us, for although Your word and will in us are truly miraculously powerful, they will still eternally not equal Your very own will and resist it. And we certainly thought too little about it this time. We did not consult enough Your Spirit in us, to know if we had to command the ships in Your name or not. If this time, like on other occasions, we had asked for advice, then it also would have been clear to us who were coming on the ships. But because we did not do that, we had to pay for that with our fear and by running away. Is it no so, Lord and Master?"

[18] **I said:** "Yes, it is so, and by this experience you became wiser again. But make yourselves ready now to leave, leader, and sail with us to Jesaira."

16. LOVE, MEEKNESS AND PATIENCE ARE BETTER THAN JUSTIFIED ZEAL



AFTER these words, the leader prepared himself, stepped into the ship where I was on with My old disciples and the other 3 friends, and he navigated with us to Jesaira. We quickly and easily came into the mentioned village where a well prepared midday meal was already waiting for us. Only 2 hours had passed since noontime, and thus it was still the normal time on which we usually ate for the noontime.

[2] Our leader was surprised about the beautiful wheat bread, and even more about the good wine and the excellently prepared noble fishes. After we partook of the meal, we went again to the already known terrace, about which also our leader could not stop praising the very beautiful view.

[3] After he had looked into all directions around him, he said **(the leader):** "This is remarkable. Our little village is located only 2 hours from here at the same lake, but what a difference between here and there. Here the surroundings abound in charming and attractive beauty, and at my place it looks more awful than charming. Although around our village it looks now, thanks to

Your mercy, o Lord, very reasonable, but a panoramic view that refreshes the mind, is completely lacking. Our bay, which cannot be called exactly small, is on both sides so much closed up at the entrance by the rather high and steep mountains that are located before it, that from the roof of our habitations and also from the mountains after us – as far as they can be climbed upon with the greatest difficulty because of their steepness – we cannot even see the high sea, let alone anything else, because the mountains are stretching out at the right side in a half circle further into the big lake and are completely obstructing our view.

[4] But instead of that, our region has another good quality compared to this one. Here, one is certainly more drawn to the love for the world than in our true desert, and the love for the world is not suitable to awaken the divine Spirit in man. Once it is awakened, then of course also such view, as this one, will certainly harm no one any more.”

[5] When the leader of the bay had spoken really wisely about this region, he asked who those 20 simple men were, who also visited the bay with us, but who until now did not speak a word to anyone else, except among themselves. And I described them to him, which made him very glad.

[6] Then I let the skipper come to him. He spoke with him and was surprised about his eloquence and about his earnest and great courage.

[7] Then he stood up, he friendly held out his hand to the skipper and also to all his companions, and said **(the leader)**: “With such men in the group, many things for the salvation of mankind can be realized. Truly, he who still fears men of this world is, especially in this time, not fit to spread the Kingdom of God, where force upon force has to be used to open up the gates for the truth and give entrance to it.

[8] Now we should no more work in secret, but step courageously with the light from the eternal Heavens of God also to the kings and princes of this world, and show them that they are also human beings, who, as they are now, will not live forever, but can expect

the judgment and the eternal death in the big world of the beyond. Yes, yes, you are right: as a burning fire one should sling the truth into the face of worldly men, and fight with a flaming sword against the priests of the lie, of dark superstition and deceit, otherwise the Earth will always remain a valley of tears and a grave of death, not only for their bodies, but also for their souls.”

[9] Now I said: “You are right, I praise your zeal, but together with your justified zeal remember also the following: there is always a greater power in the wisdom of the human spirit than in his fist, and where earnest in itself can perform little or nothing, love with its patience and meekness will do wonders. The full earnest in your own heart and its courage controls yourself. However, your weapon against men should always consist only of love, meekness and patience. Then you will achieve more on this way on which I Myself am going before men than with sheer zeal of fire and its earnest that is *as hard* as diamond.

[10] You really should not be afraid of worldly people, who in their anger can indeed kill the body, but can do nothing further anymore to your soul. Therefore, fear only the One who is a true Lord over life and death since eternity.

[11] But if you see that with love and right wisdom you can achieve nothing with men who went too much into the dark, then turn your back on them and go away from there, and you certainly will find again men with whom you will be able to do good things in My name.

[12] You should confess Me before all men, because I also confess you before My Father, but you should not force Myself on the dark, worldly men, and should also not throw My pearls to those who are worldly pigs. For I say to you: My Word is only a true fertilizer of life for the wheat, and My teaching is a true fertilizer for the noble grapes of the vineyard, but for the weeds of the Earth I do not have any fertilizer of life, for it is only to be trampled upon and burned, and to fertilize the common soil of the Earth with its ashes.

[13] He who is on the Earth for life will be awakened to life by My

Word, but he who is here for death by his own will and firm stubbornness, will also pass into death. He who wants to stand up for life from the grave of his matter, may stand up, but he who wants to fall, may fall.

[14] To preach the gospel to the devils would mean to pour oil on the fire. So be always clever like the serpents, but together with that, also as meek like the doves, then in this manner you will be very skilful workers in My vineyard of life.”

[15] When I had said that to the zealots of fire, there was a complete change in their mind, and they thanked Me from the deepest of their heart for this lesson.

17. THE LORD PREDICTS THE END OF HIS TIME ON EARTH



MUCH was still spoken after that, until the evening, about the Earth, its form, about the sun, the moon and the stars and about the other phenomena of the world’s nature, which brought about great joy to everyone.

[2] **The chief from the bay said:** “O Lord and Master, all praise to You, all honor, all love and all thanks, because You have revealed this to us, and now we know about the big house – which is called Earth, and on which we are temporarily living – what it looks like and how it is made. Because the ignorance of those things was mostly the source of evil superstition, and as a result of that, an almost inexhaustible source of nourishment for the lazy and slow pagan priests who worship idols. But with Your help it soon will be different.”

[3] Now a servant came, who invited us for the evening meal, for the sun had already set a couple of hours ago. So we stood up immediately from our seats on the terrace and went to the house to partake of the evening meal.

[4] After the evening meal we still stayed awake until midnight, and during that time, on My request, My John explained many things to the 20 fishermen and the leader of the bay. Close to

midnight we went to rest, and still, before sunrise we were on our feet.

[5] The fishermen went home, but they came back to Jesaira very early in the morning with a load of the best of fishes, which were also immediately prepared for the morning meal.

[6] As usual I went outside before sunrise, together with all who were with Me in this village. On the beautiful terrace I laid My hands upon the 20 fishermen, the chief of the bay, the innkeeper, Kisjona and Philopold, and filled them with the power to heal all kinds of diseases in My name, and I gave them the right to spread My teaching among the people, and more precisely among the blind Jews and the gentiles.

[7] They all thanked Me from the deepest of their heart for this calling, and they went then with Me for the morning meal.

[8] During the morning meal, **Mary** said to Me: “My most beloved son, You have done so many signs everywhere, but here You did not show anything of Your truly divine power. Perform a sign here also, before You travel on.”

[9] **I** said: “Woman, talk to the fishermen, then they will tell you if I did not perform any sign here. But I did not come into this world for the sake of the signs, but for the sake of the truth and the life of the soul, so that everyone who believes in the Son of Man, will have eternal life in him.

[10] No one will be saved because of My signs, but rather, everyone who believes in Me and who lives and acts according to My teaching. Besides, I have given now the power to My friends to do good to the poor, suffering people in My name, and this is a greater sign than when I would now create a world before your eyes.

[11] However, at the end of My time on this Earth, which will be during the coming time of Easter in Jerusalem, I will perform a very great sign for all men, by which many will receive eternal life, but a lot of them will come to judgment and eternal death. The one who will then not be offended at Me, will receive the life of the soul.”

[12] **Mary** said: “Of what will that last great sign consist? So that also I can come to Jerusalem to see Your greatest sign, performed by You.”

[13] **I** said: “Woman, you surely will come to Jerusalem and see the last and greatest sign that I will perform, but by that you will feel no joy but a great sadness in your pure heart. I will be betrayed, be caught by the Pharisees and be handed over to justice. And what concerns My body, it will be killed on the cross as a common criminal, but on the 3rd day I will – out of My own power and might – arise again. I will come to all My friends and brothers and give them the power to forgive men their sins in My name and to awaken the dead to life. Look, woman, of this will consist the last and greatest sign that I will perform in My body.”

[14] **Mary, and all the other friends** with her, said: “But Lord and Master, You surely will not let this happen to You?”

[15] **I** said: “Only I know the will of the Father in Me, and My soul knows what I have to do. The one who will not be offended at Me, will just like Me overcome death and penetrate to eternal life.

[16] The one who loves the life of this body because of the world, will loose the life of this soul. But the one who, for My sake, does not love it, will keep it forever in My Kingdom.”

[17] After these words of Mine, all those who were present became sad, and they thought about it, as to what would be the result of that.

[18] And **I** said: “Why are you sad about that? Do you perhaps think that I will leave you after the dead of My body? O, certainly not. Only then I will really stay with those who are Mine until the end of times on this Earth, and I will keep open, for everyone who believes in Me, the gates to the eternal life in My Heavens. Although My sheep will be scattered when I will be killed as their Shepherd, but I Myself will then gather them again, and then there will be only 1 flock and 1 Shepherd forever. But the billy goats and the wolves in sheep clothing will be removed and delivered to judgment and the eternal death of matter.”

[19] When I had finished this short speech, **a Voice** sounded in

the space of the hall, and the words sounded like this: “This Jesus of flesh and blood is My beloved Son, whom the whole of humanity should glorify. He is the incarnated expression of My love, My wisdom and My will. I am in Him and He is in Me. We are completely one. He who sees and hears Him, sees and hears also Me. And he who will do My will, will have eternal life in himself.”

[20] After these words they all fell down before Me and wanted to worship Me.

[21] But I said to everyone: “Stand up from the ground, for in this kind of expressions of honor I am not pleased, but rather in your love and in the fact that you loyally and actively persevere in My teaching.

[22] Peace be with you all. But not the kind of peace like the world has and gives, but the inner peace of the heart, of the soul in My love, which is the eternal life. Amen.”

[23] After these words of Mine, they all stood up, thanked Me for this comfort and became cheerful again.

THE LORD CLOSE TO CAESAREA PHILIPPI

18. THE TRIP FROM KIS TO MARCUS AT CAESAREA PHILIPPI

THEN I said to Kisjona: “Friend, let now again your 3 ships be ready for a further trip, for I want to travel to the old Marcus who lives near the city of Caesarea Philippi, and strengthen him, for he suffers already for ½ year from a fever.”

[2] Kisjona gave then also immediately instructions to his skippers as to what they should do. And the ships were prepared immediately for the further trip.

[3] The 20 fishermen asked Me if one or the other could accompany Me to the indicated place, as well as Mary and Joel and the chief from the bay.

[4] I said to the fishermen: “Do as you like, but it is sufficient if the skipper and still another companion will sail together as witnesses to the few places which I will visit at the Lake of Galilee. And also Mary and Joel and the leader from the bay can accompany Me. So then, let us leave now.”

[5] Also the innkeeper asked Me if he and his eldest son could accompany Me.

[6] I said: “You also have a completely free will. So do as you feel in your heart.”

[7] After these words of Mine, also the innkeeper hastily prepared himself to leave.

[8] Then we stepped into the ship and sailed off into the direction of Caesarea Philippi.

[9] After we had sailed for almost 1 hour, a couple of ships from near Tiberias that were heavily loaded with salt and grain came in our direction. And because the wind, that was favorable to us, was against them, they had great difficulties and were afraid to sink.

[10] They (the skippers) pleaded with us to help them.

[11] And I said: “Why have you loaded your 2 ships so heavily? Next time do not let yourselves be tempted by pursuit of profit,

and let also your neighbors earn something, then you will not have to go through such danger and trouble with your ships. But there are now a couple of empty ships coming. Load half of your goods into them and divide then your profit in Capernaum with them, then you will arrive there without any damage. But if you will be miserly in Capernaum, it will be up to you as to how you will return to Tiberias.

[12] The skippers promised this to Me. The 2 empty ships came along and I told them what to do in exchange for half of the profit in Capernaum. And it soon happened as I had said.

[13] Then the skippers of the 4 ships thanked Me, and they navigated, despite the headwind, into the direction of Capernaum.

[14] But we sailed to the place of our destiny with a favorable wind, which made the rowing very easy for our skippers, and we reached it soon.

[15] When we came into the village of Marcus, we met many guests who made use with good results of the powerful healing springs here.

[16] The servants of Marcus came quickly to the shore and informed us that if we also wanted to make use of the healing springs we probably would not find accommodation, since all spaces were completely full with guests from all countries. Besides, their lord was sick, and so it was now difficult to speak with him, because exactly today it was his day of fever.

[17] **I** said: “You are new servants in this house and you do not know Me, but Marcus, the owner, and his whole house knows Me. Therefore, go to your lord and say to him: ‘The Lord and Master has arrived with His disciples and His friends. He must come out of bed and come to Me, then he soon will be healed from his fever. Go and tell him that.’”

[18] The servants went and told Marcus and his wife and children. When they heard that, there was a great rejoicing among them, and they all hurried outside to come as fast as possible to Me.

[19] When **the old Marcus** saw Me, he stretched out his arms and said with a loud voice: “O Lord and Master, full of divine love and


mercy, with what kind of great desire did we all wait for You, because You certainly would visit us in our need, as You promised us then when You were here, for the salvation and well being of us and many other people. And now that my real need has almost reached its highest point, You also came to help me and also my wife, who just as I, has already become old and weak and tired, and to strengthen again my whole house in the faith in You and in Your teaching. O, we all thank You in advance for the more than great mercy, because You have found us worthy to visit us.”

[20] **I** said: “Do not be excited so much, dear friend, for you know that I can also very well hear and excellently understand the inner language of the heart. But before anything else, you and your wife, be now completely healthy of body.

[21] But next time, do not eat anymore fish that rotted in the water, and let a slaughtered fish not remain for ½ hour without salt, thyme and caraway. Then prepare it in the Jewish manner that is known to you, and you will be spared from all kinds of fever. Do the same with the flesh of animals. And do also not eat any rotting fruit and no moldy bread.”

[22] After these words of Mine, the old Marcus and his wife and children became completely healthy and strong, and they all thanked Me with many tears of joy in their eyes for the healing of their body and for the advice that was given to them.

19. MARCUS GIVES NEWS ABOUT THE SUCCESSFUL HEALINGS IN HIS BATH RESORT

HEN **I** said to Marcus: “Your new servants, who still do not know Me, informed Me at My arrival that we probably will not find accommodation here because of your many bath guests. What do you say about that?”

[2] **Marcus** said: “O Lord and Master. Not find accommodation with me? Even if there would come a 100 times more disciples and friends with You as in this case now, then I still will and could excellently accommodate them for years. My new servants – and

there are many now – do not like to work, and so they always make problems when there are new guests coming to seek accommodation. But then, if the guests divide money beforehand, then there is soon no lack of accommodation. And this seems to also have happened with You.

[3] But I will give those lazy servants a pretty good preaching, so that they will know what they have to do next time with the guests who frequently seek their physical well being here. And besides that, they visibly have also very often found the well being of their soul in this institution, which You, o Lord and Master, have only created for the well being of the people. For I and my children and elder servants have always taken care to make Yourself known to all the guests as the most wonderful Master of this institution, in such a way that they only could find the true well being of their body and their soul by the living faith in You.

[4] Gentiles as well as Jews believed our words, but those who did not believe, left the institution as they had come. And that were mostly Pharisees from Jerusalem and also from many other places and regions. They did not believe what we very truthfully told them. They scolded at what we were preaching and they were offended because they could say nothing against us because we are Romans, and they left the institution again, exactly as they had come.

[5] But it is really remarkable with people. They have seen hundreds of people who have accepted here the fullest faith in You and were by that completely healed of all their afflictions and infirmities, and still, they said that it was purely deceit and a multiple blasphemy when one could only be healed in this institution by having faith in You. If the springs could not heal with their healing power that was given to them by God, then a healing by having faith in You was purely the work of Satan. And whoever was healed in this manner, had, according to them, multiple times sold their soul to the devil.

[6] I did not make much effort anymore for these people, especially this year. I did not accept them anymore when they

came. And when they asked for the reason, I said to them the same as my new servants have said to You at Your arrival, and then they had to leave.

[7] There was even an investigation a couple of months ago, coming from Capernaum – most probably because the Pharisees, scribes and rabbi's, together with their chief, had made a complaint with the Roman commander. But I really got well away with it – of course only with Your help – for at that same time the institution was so full with Romans and Greeks that it really would have been difficult for me to accept one more person in the institution.

[8] The Romans who led the investigation had to spend their nights for 8 days long upon the hill that is well known to You. More precisely on the new big terrace that was built in Your honor. Since in this manner the mentioned Jewish priests could not do anything against me – according to the Roman decree: 'Ultra posse nemo tenetur'¹ – they no more visited this institution at all, and that is why no such individuals are present now in this institution, which will certainly not be unpleasant to You, o Lord and Master.

[9] And so I have told You now everything that seemed the most important to me, and this openly for the sake of Your disciples and friends, because they are not all-knowing like You. And would You like now, o Lord and Master, show the blissful mercy to my house with Your entrance – and immediately an abundant and good meal will be prepared. Wine and bread are certainly not lacking in My house.

[10] **I said: "I also came to you because I want to stay a couple of days in your house. But do not make Me known today and tomorrow to the present guests here. When someone will recognize Me, without your interfering, I surely will answer him.**

[11] And here you also can see the mother of My body. Your wife and children will learn from her how to prepare healthy food. And let us now enter into your house that you have expanded, and we will take some bread and wine."

¹ Latin: 'One cannot ask more from someone than he can accomplish'.

[12] Then we went into the house, went to sit at the tables and took some bread and wine. Mary went immediately into conversation with the family of Marcus, but I presented them all to him who were now with Me and who still did not know our Marcus. He asked several things to them and understood from their answers that they were filled with My Spirit. That filled him with joy, and he related many things to them about the signs and events that happened when I had been here for the first time.

[13] And so, a couple of hours went by like a couple of pleasant moments. During that time, the meal was prepared. It was brought to the very large hall and put on the tables. We partook of it at once, went then to the well-known hill, and went up to the new terrace, which the innkeeper from Jesaira could not admire and praise enough. There was enough room for everyone – even for 10 times as many people as we were, and still more.

[14] Now Kisjona asked Marcus if this terrace was also often visited by the cure guests, and at what time.

[15] **Marcus** said: “I suppose you do not want to meet strange people here. Do not worry about that. Just look to that very big, beautiful garden down there, how it is crowded with cure guests. In the direction of the lake you can see several big, beautiful terraces with a view on the lake, and there are always many people. The guests always enjoy themselves in the garden, and you seldom will see anyone outside of the garden. And this terrace on this mountain, which is not exactly low, is even less visited by the guests, despite the beautiful view we have from here into all directions. For when they arrive here in a sick condition they do not like to climb upon this mountain, and when they are healed, they prefer to travel home immediately. That is why this spot is only seldom visited by foreign guests, and thus it is only for my joy and that of my family. So we are very safe and will not be troubled by strangers.”

[16] Our Kisjona and also all the others were satisfied with this.

[17] Now they all admired the beautiful view, and Marcus described to them all places, regions and mountains, and he

entertained the group in this manner for more than 1 hour.

[18] Also I related now and then about what had happened in earlier times in this region, and so the whole widely extended surrounding was topographically¹ and historically analyzed.


[19] When the sun was setting, we saw a well recognizable Roman ship navigating towards our village, and everyone asked Me who was brought by the ship.

[20] **I** said: “You do not have to be all-knowing to know that. Where there is a place that is known for its healings, then that is also where the sick will go to. These are a few Greeks and Romans. Just let them come, because the one who believably will seek for a well being will also find it.”

[21] After a while, the ship came to the shore and brought 10 Romans and 7 Greeks who were accepted without any difficulty and were immediately accommodated into the health resort by the servants who almost did not want to accept us before.

[22] We still stayed for a whole hour after sunset on the mountain, and My disciples related to Marcus many things about My travels, teachings and deeds, and Marcus and all the others really enjoyed those stories. When the stories were ended we went down to the house again, took a light evening meal and went then to rest.

20. THE DISCIPLES ASK THE LORD ABOUT THE REASON OF HIS JOY OVER THE NATURE

 **I**N the morning before sunrise we were outside again at the shore of the lake, with some cure guests who were almost healed and who enjoyed the play of the waves on the extended clear water surface.

[2] **A few disciples asked Me:** “Lord and Master, since the time that we are around You, we notice that You are always going outside more than 1 hour before sunrise, also during the winter, and You enjoy, just like we men, the phenomena of the world’s

¹ Description of land surfaces.

nature. But since You know everything visually what is not only on and within this Earth but also what is and happens in the whole of infinity, what there was and happened and will be and will happen, we already thought many times about it how it is possible that You still can have pleasure in the things and phenomena on only a little place on this Earth.”

[3] I said: “This was again a really human blind question of yours. If I would not have a greater and deeper pleasure than you in the things and phenomena, also in this material nature, then very soon there would not be a little point present anymore of this whole Earth with everything on, in and above it.

[4] For all that exists is My eternal love, incarnated before your eyes. How could I not be pleased in My love, which is since eternity everything in all?

[5] However, the fact that I like to be outside already early in the morning, and also often until late at night, has a double reason. For firstly you should learn from it that also in the soul of man the spiritual morning, just like of this Earth, has to wake up early, and that I also will be sooner present on such early morning in man than when the sun in him will have already completely risen. And I will rejoice just as much about the ever lighter morning of life as I visibly have rejoiced before you – as a real example for you – about every natural morning.

[6] Secondly, from My continual early morning visits you should learn the activity and the right zeal. Also in this respect you should be like Me, and you should well remind the people about this to whom you will proclaim My gospel. For only through the right zeal and through an early activity can man attain to the true Kingdom of God in himself, and will then also be able to keep it for eternity.

[7] That I also like to spend the evening outside, is to show you in the first place that man should also be active in the evening of his earthly life in order to make his inner light of life stronger. For the one who will go to rest too soon in laziness and who will, in his house, give in to careless sleep, will easily experience that thieves

are breaking in with him, and rob him from his treasures. But the one, who will stay awake long, will not so easily be overtaken by such disaster.

[8] The other and second reason why I like to spend the evenings outside is the following: from this you can conclude that a free rest in the evening will only become a real bliss if one has been fully active during the whole day, from the early morning till the evening.

[9] If you have well understood now what I have told you, then remain in that light, and from now on do not ask anymore so easily about things which should be clear to you from itself. If you have well understood this, then also act accordingly, because by only understanding it, you cannot awaken the true Kingdom of God in yourselves.”

[10] When the disciples, and also all the others, heard that, they thanked Me for My patience with them and asked Me also for patience in the future.

[11] And I said: “Every person who has much love has also much patience. And I have the most, highest and purest love for you, and thus I certainly have also the greatest patience with you. The one who stays in Me by his love for Me, in him I will stay also, for I Myself am his love and patience.”

[12] Now 2 guests who took a cure came close to Me and asked to the innkeeper Marcus, who stood next to Me, who I was, for they heard that I had spoken wisely and thought that I was a philosopher¹. They were 2 Greeks who were followers of the teaching of Pythagoras.

[13] **Marcus said to him:** “Here is unspeakably much more than the Greek philosopher Pythagoras. Pythagoras could not make the blind see and the deaf hear. However, He can do this out of His very own power, and even a dead person He can awake to life. And this is certainly endlessly much more than Pythagoras.”

[14] **Then the 2 wanted to begin a conversation with Me, but a**

¹ Literally: worldly wise person.

servant came to invite us for the morning meal. And the 2 Greeks followed us to the house and waited until I would again come out of the house, for they wanted to know Me better at any price.

[15] This time we stayed for more than 1 hour for the morning meal, and this was a long time for our 2 Greeks. However, they did not dare to enter the house, since, as well educated men, they considered this to be improper, but they asked one time to the one and then again to the other servant whether they did not know Me better.

[16] But the servants received instruction from Marcus not to make Me known before time, for if it were necessary I would determine that time Myself for that. And so the 2 Greeks could not know anything further about Me than what Marcus had said to them before, even when they presented a generous tip to one of the servants.

[17] Finally we were ready with our meal, which lasted longer this time because our Mary related several events from her and also from My childhood, which were also faithfully written down by Matthew in a special book.

21. THE LORD AND THE 2 GREEKS



OW we went outside again, and just as I stepped out of the door, the 2 Greeks bowed down immediately before Me and asked Me to tell something more about Myself.

[2] But I said to them: “Why should I tell you something more about Myself? For you are rock solid adherents of Pythagoras and partly also of Aristotle, and the word alone you do not believe, and if I would perform a sign before your eyes, you will say: ‘Ah, He is one from the school of the Essenes.’ So you can see that My testimony about Myself would not have a great or useful value for you, and therefore for the time being it will be almost wiser to keep silent before you than to speak.”

[3] **The 2 Greeks** said: “Master, You have spoken correctly and truthfully, and since You have so sharply characterized us with a

few words, we have now already very clearly seen that You can very well see in the inside of man. And even for the cleverest philosopher it would be difficult to pretend even a little bit before You. But since we have concluded this already from Your few words, and have therefore no reason not to trust Your words, You can, if You want, tell us something more about Yourself, for a word from the mouth of a truly great wise man is more valuable for the life of many thousand times thousand men than all the treasures of the Earth that cannot strengthen or comfort them in the end of their days.

[4] The word of a wise man becomes a permanent possession of the human heart, and once the evening of life is really dawning, and man comes into the days that are no more pleasant to him, then that word becomes a light full of comfort and true, inner power of life, and thus the most truthful and most inner friend of everyone. And therefore, we would gladly like to hear a few words from Your mouth about Yourself, for we are already beforehand fully convinced that our hearts will find a great comfort and a good, true strengthening in Your words.”

[5] **I said:** “If you believe that, then come with us to the terrace on the mountain, there we will further speak with each other.”

[6] **The 2 Greeks said:** “Master, although this rocky mountain is not high, but it is very steep, and healthy lungs and rather healthy feet are needed to reach the terrace on the mountain without great effort. We are – all praise to the God of the Jews – in this institution already on the way of improvement, but our chest and our feet are still not really all right. That is why it finally will be a bit difficult for us to reach the terrace on the mountain. Would You not rather for us spend a short time here, where it is flat, wherefore we certainly will be grateful to You according to our means.”

[7] **I said:** “Dear friends, I alone know why I only on the mountain want to speak with you, and then you will know it also. So do not be afraid for this hill, for your little effort will be changed into a real comfort.”

[8] On these words of Mine the 2 Greeks decided to go with us on the mountain anyway, and when we came on top at the terrace, the 2 were surprised that they had reached that height with hardly noticeable trouble or effort, and this while they could very easily breath, and they thought that the emanation of also this mountain, as well as the healing springs that proceeded from its interior had a very beneficial influence on the body of men. They thought that to such mountains should be given some kind of godly honor, and its tops should be decorated with one or even several temples that are dedicated to the gods, because men thought, and also believed, that such mountains with their healing springs were especially visited and repeatedly blessed by the immortal gods for the well being of suffering and mortal mankind in their affliction.

[9] **The one** said further: “It surely will be quite different, but most of the people who were thrown into the world without ever being instructed by someone about the reason of their existence, think differently¹. The sight of the sky, with the sun, the moon, the countless stars, and the sight of the whole nature of the Earth stimulated them to all kinds of supernatural assumptions through their own always lively fantasy, to which also very lively dreams of certain people must have contributed, which can of course only be the result of a very lively fantasy. And so, doctrines about higher, supernatural beings were certainly the result of assumptions and dreams that were later transformed by spiritual poets into all kinds of personalities and who were illustrated to the people by artful sculptors.

[10] After that, came skillful orators and magicians, from who the present, almost invincible priesthood with its temples and oracles originated, which keeps the common people into a blind belief in the mighty gods – in whom no priest believes anymore – *and this* no more for the sake of the gods but for the sake of the kings and princes, so that they² would not stand up against their

¹ ‘think differently’ was added.

² The people.

tormentors and would bring them to ruin.

[11] But no matter how with these gods, I am of the opinion that even the most blind belief in one or more higher beings is always still better than no belief at all, and a mountain or a hill that is decorated with a temple is more constructive to the human mind than a wild plain that gives little nourishment to the fantasy of man.

[12] With this I do not want to edify idolatry as a reality compared to an extremely wise Man like You, great Master, but I do not despise it because it gives the desired comfort to numberless masses of people during their bitter life on this Earth in all distress, and finally even in the always painful moment of their dying. And in this respect I fully agree with the wise Aristotle, without doing away in the least of the much more edifying religion¹.


[13] And so, I and my friend have now completely revealed ourselves before You, and I believe now that You also, great Master, can reveal Yourself a little more to us. But let Your own will guide You, as also ours is guiding us.

[14] Look, I just would like to add one more thing from our old Greek wisdom to what is already said: we are truly wise men in our own manner, because we always keep in mind that we will soon die. We only try to attain to the kind of happiness on this Earth that death would not be a terror to us, but would be a comforting, true refreshment for the heart. That is why the word from the mouth of a great wise man is more valuable to us than all the treasures of the Earth, for it can also become a comforting light in our heart when our eye will extinguish for the light of the world.

[15] So be so kind, very wise Master, to give such a word to us 2, then You Yourself will be happier in knowing that You have made 2 unhappy people happy.”

¹ Religion of the Jews.

22. THE SPIRITUAL SEARCH OF THE GREEKS

 SAID: “Listen, My dear friends, although your wish is very praiseworthy, it is still somewhat selfish. For when you were still young, healthy and strong men, and were not thinking of a bitter death like now at your age, the world with all its treasures meant everything to you. And at that time you were only striving for the perishable earthly goods that you have gathered in great quantities by your way of living. Besides, you also did not despise all kinds of worldly amusement, and you participated and enjoyed in whatever the world could offer you and which was pleasing and desiring. At that time you thought only little about one or the other God or one or the other philosopher, neither about a word that could strengthen and enlighten your heart.

[2] But when you were close to 50 years, and the life’s powers of your body became weaker, and you saw many good friends and acquaintances depart from this life, and some of them under much bitter pain and torment, you became more serious and asked yourselves: ‘How long will we still last? Is there really another life after this life, according to the doctrine of our priests, better or still worse, or is there none? Who in the world can give us a conclusive and certain proof on this?’

[3] Other people, who did not look upon life so seriously, and who were also less worried about the misery of dying than you, told you: ‘Read Plato, Aristotle, Pythagoras. Then it will be clear to you what the life is like on the other side.’

[4] That is what you did with great zeal, but it still was not clear to you. You turned to the oracles, which could satisfy you even less. Besides that, you came to know that the true wisdom could in that respect be found with the Essenes and in the Scriptures and books of the old Jews. That is why you traveled to Essaea. There you also did not really find what you had hoped for. After that, you acquired the Scriptures of the Jews, read those throughout, but this could also not make you wiser because you could not understand them.

The only thing you gained by it, is that it made you give up your belief in many gods and made you believe in the possibility of the existence of only 1 God.

[5] During your search, which lasts now almost 20 years, since you are almost 70, you became weak and tired and you caught all kinds of sicknesses of the soul and the body. You went to all kinds of health resorts, and also this one here, about which you heard many commendable things, to obtain there your physical health back again, so that you could search again with a clear mind for the nature of life.

[6] On My advice you have now climbed this mountain with us, and as you admitted yourself, you feel much better now than before, down below. And because you are better, you want to hear from My mouth, that which you, in your ever increasing affliction, did not succeed to know in full clarity for 20 full years, and this despite all your efforts.

[7] Yes, he who is old and seeks very seriously what he easily could have found with much less effort when he was young if the world with all its sensual pleasure and frivolity would not have hindered him, will still find it, but only after he has cleansed his soul of all material dross and spots.

[8] Suppose man – also when he is very old – would always feel as youthful and in perfect health, being joyful and cheerful, then, what you began to search already 20 years ago, would be, and stay, as indifferent to him as it was to you when you were young. But the age that becomes more and more difficult, and the end of life that comes ever closer, forces the soul, who loves life, to worry about the further nature of life, and will ask now and then about the things concerning the blind faith of the people.

[9] The dark and doubtful answers that he receives during his seeking purify him by the fear for the death of the body that has awakened in him, which is caused by the love for the world that keeps him imprisoned and that makes him blind and deaf. He starts to despise and to escape the goods of this world, which were once so tasteful to him, and purifies himself by that of what imprisoned

him in the judgment and the death of matter.

[10] But if the soul, also when he is old, would be able to make the perishable matter of his body young again by one or the other secret healing medicine¹, then he once more would very pleasantly continue to rest in his walking grave and would not be concerned about his own life. But God, out of His eternal love, has arranged this earthly life – which serves for the trial of the free will – exactly in such a way that man has to become older, weaker and more tired, and especially him who in his youth was too much attached to the matter of this timely world, so that finally also his soul, who was kept imprisoned by death, can lift himself up to the sure, eternal life.

[11] Once the soul, with the help of his hidden Creator and Lord, has detached himself from the judgment of matter and has found himself in his inner light of life through his active striving, then he also has become lord over his matter and its death, which he does not fear as much as before, and he is not that much concerned anymore about the age and weakness of his body, for he himself has become healthy, strong, and full of comfort in himself.

[12] This is what you have sought, and what you have also found here. For he who will seriously seek, will also find that which was sought. To him who knocks at the door, will be opened at the right time, and to him who asks, will also be given that which was asked.

[13] But to know how you have now finally found here what you scarily have sought for so long, will only later become clear and understandable to you. Now it is again your turn to say openly to us how you have understood what I have told you. Because a house that has to be reconstructed cannot be finished before the ground, which must support the house, has received its full strength. If you want, you can speak now.”

[14] Here, the 2 old Greeks were so much surprised about this, that they really did not know how they should begin to speak.

¹ Literally: ‘arcanum’ (elixir).

23. THE GREEKS HAVE QUESTIONS ABOUT THE OMNISCIENCE OF THE LORD



ONLY after a while, **one of them** spoke as follows: “O extremely wise Master, as You have explained, very truly and correctly, we came to know many things during those miserable 20 years, but even the most trustworthy oracles did not know anything about our youth, and just as less about our way of living. But You, whom we have come to meet so very unexpectedly for the first time of our life, have explained our way of living so completely truthfully as if You were with us already since our youth. But how is that possible to You? Did You read that from our faces? How, how was that possible to You?”

[2] **I said:** “Do not worry about that now, for even if I would tell you directly, then you would not understand it. However, when you will become more awake in your spirit, you will understand in yourself how it is very easy for Me to tell every person openly what on each moment he has thought, said, wanted to do and did do since his birth. For no one can hide himself before Me. But we will not further talk about this for the moment, and you may continue to speak.”

[3] **Then said one of the Greeks:** “Extremely wise Master, we visited many schools. We have been in all of Egypt, and with our money we let them show us everything in the cities. We also let them initiate us in a lot of old mysteries of ancient wisdom, but in no school we have found a master who could completely truthfully say about himself what You have said just now about Yourself. And yet, considering Your outer appearance, You are also only a man, who only learned his wisdom and secret art in a school before.

[4] But where in the world is that school? And if there is no such school on the whole Earth, then You unmistakably must be a god, who alone can do the things that You mentioned, as we know by the different religions about the capabilities and qualities of the existing gods.

[5] But for a man to know from someone, whom he has never seen before and from whom he also cannot know what his name is and in which city, or on which island, or in which part of the mainland he was born, and to say who he is, what he has, how he has lived and acted, that is endlessly much more than the magic that was no matter how secretly hidden. Do You perhaps also know our names, our place of birth and our women and children?”

[6] I said: “If I know the one thing, I certainly also know the other. But if I would have told you your names and places of birth, and also your women and children, then you would have thought by that: ‘Yes, that He easily can know from our traveling papers, which we had to show at our arrival in order to be accepted in this institution, because everything is strictly arranged according to the laws of Rome.’

[7] But what I told you is not stated in your traveling papers, and so this is more memorable than when I immediately would have greeted you as citizens of Melita¹ with your names Polycarp and Eolit. And if I moreover would have told you that your women, who are still alive, are from Athens, and that you, Polycarp, have 8 children, 3 boys and 5 girls, and Eolit 12, 5 boys and 7 girls, this is stated in your traveling papers which I possibly could have read. But what I told you is not stated in your traveling papers, and therefore I also could not have known it from your papers. And I still know a lot more, which however I do not wish to tell you yet.

[8] However, the school where I could have learned it – this according to your way of thinking – exists nowhere on the whole world, for I Myself am the Master and the School.

[9] The one who learns it from Me and who comes with Me in the school of life, by believing in the one, only true God and by the love for Him, and through that by the love for fellowman, and who will then live and act according to My teaching, is a good disciple of My school. It is the only real and true school of life for everyone

¹ The present Malta.

who wants to join that school and who wants therein to persevere unshakably until the end of his earthly life. Only in this school he will find the eternal life of the soul in the beyond, and death and judgment of matter will leave him.

[10] The one who joins this school, and acts according to its teaching, will then also experience in himself how and why only I am the Master and the School Myself.

[11] However, in this school, one cannot be half in and half out, but before anything else he should strive only for the Kingdom of God and for its justice, which is all inside of man and nowhere else with some splendor outside of man. And do not worry about the things and treasures of this world, while they have no value for the life of the soul of man, because they are quite as perishable as the most beautiful shining dewdrop that is blown away already by a breeze. For that which a true disciple of My school needs for his timely livelihood, will moreover be given to him as a free gift.

[12] Look at the birds in the sky, the animals in the forest and those in the water. They do not sow and do not reap, and still they are all provided with everything they need. And if God takes care of the animals, then He certainly will take care even much more of men who believe in Him and love Him above all.

[13] So you also – to give you an example – can look at the grass and the many flowers in the field. Truly, they are more beautifully decorated and dressed than king Salomon has ever been in his greatest splendor.

[14] And if God – who is the only true Father of all men – takes care in this manner for the plants in the field, that are still there today, but the following day are mowed, dried and are then partly burned in the ovens and partly fed to the domestic animals, then He all the more will take care of His children, so that they do not have to walk naked on the Earth. Because someone, who is a real disciple of My school, will certainly be better than all the grass and all other plants on the whole Earth.


[15] Therefore, a true disciple of My school should not worry about the next day, about what he will eat and drink, and with what

he will clothe his body. Because that is what the heathens do, who are no disciples of My school. My true disciples will surely be taken care of, for what they need most of all.

[16] Now you know out of which school I have taken My wisdom. But around Me you can already see a considerable number of My disciples. They also can tell you that this is how it is concerning My Mastership and School, and that it is not different from what I have now pointed out to you.”

[17] Now the 2 Greeks made big eyes, turned to one of My disciples, more precisely to John who seemed the most friendly to them, asking if it was indeed so concerning these things which were still not very clear to them.

24. THE OPINION OF THE GREEKS ABOUT THE ONLY TRUE GOD

 **JOHN said:** “Yes, dear friends, so it is indeed, even it is still not completely clear to you, but it will become more clear to you when you will join that school in yourselves by the faith in the one, only true God and by the pure love for Him and your fellowman.

[2] However, for this school, there is no house on the whole Earth, no temple and no Egyptian pyramid, for it exists only from the knowledge of the inner truth out of God, and besides that, from the faithful action according to that known truth.

[3] You have searched for the truth for a long time and have now also found it. Now you know what man should do to become, to be and to stay a true disciple of the school of the inner life. However, knowing and realizing alone is by far still not sufficient to be yourself a disciple of this inner school of life out of God in man. Only the free action, coming from the free will according to the known truth will make man a true, real disciple in his own inner school of life.”

[4] **When the 2 heard this from John, they thought by themselves:** ‘Strange. This disciple speaks just like his Master, and he also says

that we have finally found the truth which we sought for a long time. This is really very praiseworthy, however, we can detect in ourselves only very little of that truth. We also should act according to that truth, but how is that possible when the truth itself is still very dark to us?

[5] We only should believe in the one and only true God, love Him very purely above all, and our fellowmen also. Yes, that should now not exactly be one of the most difficult tasks of life, but who and where is that only true God?

[6] To just, by coincidence, imagine yourself one or the other only true god and then also to believe firmly and without doubting in that being that is imagined as one god, to love *that thought* above all, and from that, also your fellowman, that is somehow a strange demand. If every person would do that, then everyone will also have his own god, which would then result in as many only true gods as there are human beings who are living, have lived and still will live on this good Earth. And that will then be even worse than our belief in many gods, for we know what we observe, and no one can say to the other: ‘Look, the Zeus or the Apollo in whom I believe and which I observe is better than yours.’

[7] This teaching must in time inevitably result in such evil among the people that every person, who is somehow wise from nature, will clearly prefer his own god above the one from another person who is from nature less talented, and then the old wars of the gods will appear again.

[8] Thus, that one and only true God must then be shown to man with the greatest certainty and clarity as if existing outside of man, and all men must only believe in that God and love Him purely above all – otherwise, in the end, no one will benefit at all from that teaching.

[9] And we think that this must also be the God of the Jews, in whom the more experienced Jews do not seem to believe too firmly. But then we should receive a light about that God. Otherwise also the God of the Jews will not be one hair better than our Zeus, whom we also have never seen yet.”

25. THE TEACHING OF THE LORD ABOUT THE ONE, ONLY TRUE GOD



WHILE the 2 Greeks were still having these thoughts, I interrupted them and said the following to them: “My friends, after the words of My disciple John, you let strange thoughts come up in yourselves. If it would be as you think, you finally would be right. But concerning the one, only true God it is quite different than what you have thought, and therefore your opinion is very incorrect.

[2] You want to receive a light and full clarity about the God of the Jews, and that is a very fair desire of yours. However, you have read the books of Moses where it is written with great certainty and much clarity about who that one, only true God is, in whom only men should believe and besides whom they should not have any strange gods.

[3] That one, only true God has revealed Himself – as well as the fact that He exists – to Moses on the mountain Sinai. And He did not only perform great visible signs for all the present Israelites, but He also gave them extremely wise commandments and rules with which they could be a very happy people if they would strictly follow them. Because, with this, they not only would have had God completely visibly before them, with whom they could, and were allowed to, freely and openly speak as real children to their Father concerning all their requests and needs. But He has also always greatly enlightened the way to the eternal life of the soul to them, and has kept open the great world in the beyond with its blessed inhabitants, what thousands of people can still testify in this very dark time, and about which a lot of old prophets and seers have spoken and written.

[4] Now if this is so and not different, then why, under such happy conditions of life which were often confirmed by a lot of the most infallible personal experiences, did they not remain in that belief and in the best and most living order by loving God above all as their dear Father?

[5] Look, the reason was self-love and love for the world that became more and more predominant with a lot of people, and from which they finally have never again turned away, despite many warnings and also often severe chastising.

[6] Thus they sank down into the old judgment of matter of the world and its lecherous flesh, lost the ancient, inner light of life of their souls, so much so that they cannot distinguish anymore their soul from their flesh. They do not know anymore what a soul is, and so it is not clear at all to them that they have a soul, who will live forever.

[7] But if man has lost himself in his most noble part of life, in such a way that he, although still alive and existing, is no more able to discover that he exists, then how can he recognize the Being of God and believe in Him firmly while he himself has become almost completely dead in his part of life by an excessive love for the world and which should be alive,?

[8] But as it happened with you, before you searched for the lost ancient truth, and as this is still partly happening with you, it happens now with almost numberless many people in a thousand times more terrible way. And truly, if I did not come into this world to show men again the way to the eternal life of the soul, then no man could have discovered that way anymore and become blessed, here and in the beyond.

[9] Therefore, I Myself am the Way, the Truth and the eternal Life. The one who believes in Me and lives and acts according to My words, will save his soul from eternal death and the judgment of the world and its matter.


[10] The will of the one, only true God and Father of men, eternally living from His own power, you can come to know from the books of Moses and the prophets. If you strictly will live according to the – say – only 10 commandments, then God's Spirit will penetrate you and will enlighten you. In that light you will then not only completely know the one and only true God, and consequently be able to love Him above all, but then He will also reveal Himself to you and raise you to all wisdom and

its power.

[11] Then you will no more think that according to My teaching every man will finally have his own god if he would imagine one, in whom he should believe without doubting and whom he also should love above all if he wants to attain to the eternal life of the soul. But then you will receive in yourselves the light awareness that the God who revealed Himself to you is one and unchangeably the same who has always faithfully revealed Himself at all times to all those who have lived and acted completely according to His will.

[12] If you understood Me better now than before, then act accordingly. And only when there will be light and when it will become clear in you, you will completely realize that you have found here with Me what you have searched in vain for 20 long years, together with still several of your other companions, and have only found it now here.”

26. THE GREEKS RECOGNIZE THE LORD. PURPOSE AND CAUSES OF SICKNESSES.

 **OLYCARP** said on this: “Extremely wise Master, we are extremely thankful for this teaching, and with all our strength we will follow Your advice as strictly as possible, although Moses is difficult to understand for us in many parts of his writings. But based on what You have promised us, we hope to also penetrate into the whole spirit of the writings of Moses and also into those of the other prophets if we follow, on Your advice, the simple 10 commandments as strictly as possibly. [2] But, wise Master, please have the patience and goodness to tell us if You also came by that spiritual way to Your truly divine wisdom and power.”

[3] **I** said: “As a human being of flesh and blood, certainly through no other way, because according to the divine order there is eternally no other way that exists or can exist. But I, whom you can see here and to whom you can speak, am not the one who gave you

that advice, but there is One who lives in Me, who is higher in all fullness of divine love, wisdom and power, and He is the One who has spoken to you now in this way, as *He spoke* to Moses and to many other prophets and wise men before, and that is also the One in whom you should believe without doubting and whom you should love above all by acting according to His will that has been faithfully revealed to you.

[4] So in Me, there is also the One who came visibly into this world, whom you searched and were not able to find in any school nor in any temple.

[5] As I am here now in Myself, being active throughout the whole of infinity, so I will also exist and be active in the spirit in all those who will keep My simple commandments, who believe in Me and who actively will love Me above all.

[6] But those who, although they believe in Me and say ‘Lord, Lord’, but who are lukewarm in their actions, and careless in their love for their fellowman, I will not live in them and I will not reveal Myself to them, and My power and wisdom will not fill their soul. For since every man has a completely free will, I want that he first comes to Me, completely out of his free will, by acting in everything according to My will that was revealed to him. Then I also will come to him, reveal Myself to him and then fill him with all My wisdom and power by the Holy Spirit of My eternal love that rules everywhere. This is how the Lord spoke before, and also now.”

[7] When **the 2** heard this from My mouth, they looked very much surprised, and after having thought deeply about it for a little while, they said: “Very vaguely we already thought that there was something more different about You than only an extremely wise man, for You Yourself showed it to us very clearly when You revealed our whole course of life. Now however, through Your last words it has been as clear as the sunlight that You are completely God in Yourself, in spite of Your body, and actually the same One whom we have sought for so long and were not able to find until now.

[8] But now that we have found You, no power in the world will be able to turn us away from what we do not only believe, but of which we are fully convinced.

[9] But since You, Lord, Lord, are that same only, true, one God in Yourself in whom all men should fully believe and whose will, which was faithfully revealed to them, they should fulfill in very active deeds, we dare to direct to You in full faith our very humble request to make our bodies as healthy as possible, which we will need for the true completion of our souls. For we do believe now that nothing is impossible to You.

[10] However, we do not want this now as a sign for the truth of what we believe from You, but only because we certainly can be better active with a healthy instrument for the completion of our souls and of our companions than with a sick and weak *body*. For together with a sick body, suffers also the soul, and has only little desire for a greater activity.”

[11] **I said:** “It will be done according to your faith. But besides of what you believe, you should remember that, for the sake of his soul, it is not always beneficial for man to walk around with a completely healthy body. For if his flesh is too healthy, it also becomes easily excited to all kinds of sensual lusts, in which the soul becomes covetous as well, than when his flesh is sickly and weak. And so, a physical sickness is in a certain way a guard before the door of the inner life of the soul.

[12] Nevertheless, you will be completely physically healthy. But be careful that at certain occasions, which are frequent with the Greeks, you will not again fall into your old sins, and by that, also into still worse sicknesses. So keep always the commandments of Moses in mind, in your heart and in your will. Deny yourself, and follow the spirit of My teaching.

[13] I do not want for anyone to endure this earthly trial life for the freedom of will with a sick body, but if men will not follow the old advice of My love and My order, but do what they should not do, then they are also the creators themselves of all afflictions of their body and their soul.

[14] And I cannot turn around My order, by which the existence of all things are possible, for the sake of those who are frivolous and who are blind by their own fault. If someone knows that his body is in pain when it is hit or pricked, but who nevertheless will hit and prick it, it is his own fault when his body feels much pain because of that, because for the sake of the absurd foolishness of the people I will not provide a soul with an insensible body and will also not make it possible that, because of the gravity, he could not fall from the roof on the ground. This *I say to you* also, so that you can keep this in mind.”

27. THE PRACTISE OF NEIGHBORLY LOVE



HE 2 Greeks said: “O Lord Lord, we thank You from the deepest of our heart and life for the so wonderful sudden healing of our body, but we ask You also, if we would become weak as a result of our physical health, in no matter what way, and would be attracted by one or the other temptation of the world and our flesh, to always give us the necessary strength to resist with true heroic courage all temptation that can come over us. For we can see now already ourselves that without Your help no man can overcome all dangers and every enemy who lie in wait for them.

[2] It is easy to evade an enemy whom we can see, or to strongly and with full courage step up to him with weapons in the hand and make him harmless. But man has countless many invisible enemies against whom only You, o Lord, Lord, can always fight with success. Therefore we ask You also for Your help if an invisible enemy would come near to harm us, for such enemies can only be conquered by man with Your almighty power.”

[3] **I** said: “Your opinion is completely true and correct. Without Me, no one can achieve anything for the salvation of his soul. And even if he has kept the laws that were revealed to him, as if out of his own willpower, then he still should acknowledge in himself that he has been a lazy and slow servant, and give the honor only

to God for all the good deeds he has done, then God will always support him and make him strong.

[4] He who will always give the honor to God for all the good things *he has done*, is pleasing to Him and is a real helper and servant after His heart. God will not leave the one who will not leave God in his heart, but will protect him with His hand. However, the one who will leave God in his heart and who will pay little or no attention at all to Him, who thinks to be his own lord and act according to his worldly reason, and who will let himself be honored, speaking about his cleverness and noble deeds when he succeeded something, rewards himself and will not have to expect any reward from God. For all the good and true things that you do, do them in My name, and I will be with you and will support you and make you strong.”

[5] Then the 2 Greeks thanked Me again, as well as Kisjona, Philopold, the innkeeper from Jesaira, the skipper and the leader of the known fishing village. And all the disciples praised Me because I disclosed this to the 2 Greeks.

[6] Now the 2 asked Me if they could tell their companions, who came with them to this cure resort, about what they had experienced in such wonderful way.

[7] I said: “As long as I am staying here you should not talk about Me and not make Me known, but what you know about Moses and about the prophets, especially about Isaiah and Ezekiel, and from the psalms of David, you can talk very zealously.

[8] Before I will leave, I Myself will visit the guests of the resort and give them an invitation, *asking* if they also would like to enter into the Kingdom of God. Only after that, you can further talk with them. Those upon whom you will lay on your hands in My name, will become healthy. But this you should only do after I have first visited the resort. However, today I will not visit the resort yet.”

[9] Then the 2 Greeks stood up, thanked Me again and went to their companions who were already looking for them. However, we stayed until the middle of the day on the mountain and talked with each other about the consequences of faith and the true, pure

love for God and fellowman.

[10] Concerning neighborly love, our **Marcus** asked Me: “Lord and Master, should we also show neighborly love to well-known bad people and squanders who mostly have wasted and reveled away their wealth in an irritating sinful manner, and also to those who are clearly our enemies?”

[11] **I** said: “In showing neighborly love you should not make any exception, but do good to everyone, because for the one who will make exceptions, I also will make all kinds of exceptions.

[12] When someone is in need and comes to you, then show him neighborly love in a spiritual or also in a material way. However, the spiritual neighborly love should come before the material.

[13] If you have converted a sinner, and he is in need in an earthly way, then help him out of it. If he sins again after that, then rebuke him in love, and do not become his enemy. For with the measure with which you measure in My name, will also in turn be measured to you again.

[14] Judge no one, then you also will not be judged later. So also, do not condemn or curse anyone, so that you also will not be condemned or cursed later.

[15] Do good to those who do evil to you. By that you will strew glowing coals over their heads and make them your friends. Thus, bless also those who hate and curse you, then they will regret it. Forgive your enemies 7 times 77 times. If they will not improve by that, you can present the matter to a worldly judge, and the incorrigible enemy should be put out of the community, because the one who does evil in an incorrigible way should also be chastised, so that his fellowmen would no longer be vexed by him.

[16] So be always submissive to the worldly authority, whether it is mild or severe, for it would have no power if it would not have been given from above because of the many incorrigible sinners.

[17] But you should not submit a complaint for every little thing, and not go to the worldly judges without an urgent necessity, because what you do not wish to come over you, spare this also to your fellowmen as far as this is possible. Only unmistakable

thieves and robbers and too severe fornicators and adulterers you may deliver to justice, as well as one who has committed a murder. But you should not become angry because of that, but only do what is necessary. Leave all the rest to Me and the judges.

[18] Look, My friend Marcus, this is My will concerning this point. He who will act accordingly, will also never lack My blessing.”

[19] Marcus and all the others thanked Me for this advice.

[20] Now a servant came to tell us that the midday meal was now ready, and we stood up to go home.

28. THE EXPERIENCES OF THE GREEK DOCTOR AND HIS TESTIMONY ABOUT THE LORD



WHILE we partook of the midday meal with Marcus, the 2 Greeks spoke with their companions, for when these saw very quickly that their 2 companions had entered the resort completely healthy, they asked what had happened to them by which they had become so healthy.

[2] The 2 could however, with the best of will, not keep completely silent about all the things that happened to them in the morning. So they made me known before their companions, but very discreet and reserved, for they thought about what I said to them.

[3] They described Me as a very great wise Man of the Jews who also possessed an extremely great power to completely heal, only by his will, all sicknesses, in such a way that a sick person would become suddenly as healthy as he hardly ever was in his childhood.

[4] When their companions heard this, as well as other things about My wisdom, they wanted to go to Me and ask for the health of their body, but the 2 Greeks prevented them by telling them that I would maybe visit the cure resort this same afternoon. The companions of the 2 Greeks were satisfied with this for the moment, but they still wanted only to talk about Me.

[5] **One of them, who was a very respected doctor in his own village, and after he heard more about Me from his 2 companions, made the following remark:** “I remember now something about that special Savior and wise Man of the Jews. He most probably will be the same about whom I heard many things in Tyre and Sidon. Also many of you must have heard more about Him.

[6] They say that He is a Galilean from Nazareth and the son of a carpenter who gave up the profession of carpenter completely when He was around 30 years. He drew disciples unto Himself and then started the work as teacher and healer. However, the priests of the Jews persecute Him because the whole people go to Him and believe in Him, for He confirms His teaching with great miracles and other great signs.

[7] Some think that He is a great prophet, others think that he is a new king of the Jews who will drive out the Romans from the Jewish land, which however would not be His plan since He must be a much greater friend of the gentiles than of the Jews who care little about their God. Again others think that He is a pure Son of God, and some think that He is the ancient Jehovah Himself who clothed Himself with the flesh of men in order to instruct them about everything and to deliver them from the long night of all their errors.

[8] But no matter how it may be, when He will come to us, we certainly will know Him better, on condition that He is indeed the One about who I – as said – have heard already many things.”

[9] **Now also the others said:** “Yes, you have spoken truly and correctly. We also have heard already many times the strangest things about that Galilean, which sounded of course even more unbelievable than the myths of our gods. That is why we said: If this is true about Him, then He clearly and truly is a God in whom also we Greeks and Romans will believe.”

[10] **The 2 Greeks who were already healed said:** “You are right, and you have drawn our attention that lately we also heard about this a couple of times when we – as you know – were searching for the truth. But in His presence we did not think about that, although

He hinted at it. Maybe He Himself did not want it, so that we could not remember what we sometimes have heard. That also should be talked about when He will come to the cure resort, although not for our sake but for your sake.”

[11] **Their companions said:** “That, my dear friends, will become apparent if in His presence there will be a good opportunity for that, and if He will allow us to ask Him. We will be glad and most grateful if He will heal our bodies, and especially our inward parts that have become already so weak because of old age, and have become completely unsuitable for the vital service of our limbs.

[12] It is true that I am a doctor and I have relieved the pain of already many suffering people, but the weaknesses of old age, that we have indeed inflicted for the greatest part on ourselves, cannot be completely healed through our herbs, oils or healing baths like both of you by that Man of wonders.

[13] Someone who can do that, only by his will, is clearly more than numberless masses of people who by their will cannot even break the weakest thread of a spider, let alone heal the blood and the inward parts of an old and weak man. So someone who can do that, is compared to other people a god, and this for the very logical reason that he is capable of doing things that can only be expected from the high gods who were never seen by any mortal being.

[14] Although they say that the gods work only invisibly before us men and that numberless many powers of nature and serving spirits are at their disposal, but this is what the people must believe. Nevertheless, no one has ever looked behind the veil of the threatening Isis. But our Man does divine things before our eyes, and speaks, teaches and even accepts disciples who learn from Him the art to become equal to gods, and maybe also to become as immortal as they are. That is why such Man deserves unarguably to be preferred above all gods who never existed before the eye of man, nor have given him even a half true testimony of their existence and their works.

[15] But this Man exists, and gives a very true testimony before

the eyes of all men of the fact that He is a real, living and truly existing God. And this we do not even have to believe blindly, for we can convince ourselves of it with all our sense organs. Thus, already for this reason, I declare Him to be an only true God, and I send all the other idols, who existed only in the fantasy and the imagination of men, to the kingdom of the vague and empty fables, for He has made both of you healthy, only by His will, in such a way that, as far as I know, you have never been *healthier* before. Therefore, I want to give Him in advance all the honor that is due to a God. Despite my old aches of the stomach and liver, I rejoice to see Him and to walk to Him with a great love and deep respect. Maybe He will also find me worthy for a complete healing, which is very easy for Him.”

29. THE CONFESSION OF THE DOCTOR



WHEN the doctor, who possessed a clear mind, had finished his speech about Me to his companions, who, with the exception of the 2 already healed Greeks, shrugged nevertheless their shoulders at certain statements of the doctor, of which I was very well aware, I healed the doctor from all his old afflictions through My will, as completely as the 2 Greeks before on the mountain. He noticed this immediately, and with the happiest face of the world he made the following speech: “Listen, friends, the Man whom I exalted as an only true God according to my understanding and full conviction, despite the fact that you frequently shrugged your shoulders, has already accomplished on me the miracle that I desired, without even showing Himself to us. For I feel now suddenly so healthy, and fit and strengthened in all the parts of my body as never before in my already long life.

[2] This was done to me now by this Man, who is entirely the only true God. And compared to Him, all the rest belongs to the dark kingdom of fables. And with this, He has proven to me more clearly than with a thousand newly created suns at the firmament that my statement is totally true. Because no man – even equipped

with all the arts of the magicians who perform oracles – has truly never known someone’s secret wishes, and certainly not without any help, nor has he totally helped a suffering human being with only his will as I am helped now.

[3] Will you also shrug your shoulders when I, who am an experienced doctor in many things, consider that great Man as the one, only true God, who can, wants to, and will help us in everything if we will give Him the honor, and when I consider Him in full conviction, as the One whom He indisputably is? Even if He – as far as His to us visible body is concerned – comes from Galilee.

[4] You can believe the childish metamorphoses¹ of our invented gods and demigods that are formed in stone, wood and metal, although they have never heard anyone’s prayer and have never helped anyone, but with this Man of wonders you make a doubtful face. Why actually, I am asking?”

[5] **One of his companions said:** “Dear friend, who are very respected by all of us, we know you and know that you are a very righteous man, and you always had a very warm heart for all that is good, true and extraordinary. But we know also from you that you like to search for extremes, downwards as well as upwards, and you rarely make use of the so-called golden middle rule. However, with us it is always: *festina lente*.²

[6] We do not at all reject your statement, and we think now also that your opinion is not mistaken, but all this happened like a flash of lightning to us, and with our also very spoiled stomach and weakened memory we were not able to digest this as well as you did, who are now completely healthy. Besides, several Greeks and Romans and still many more Jews are listening to us. If we now would loudly rejoice about what we have experienced – about which we quietly also greatly rejoice – we can easily do more harm than good to this matter, which in itself is great and truly divinely

¹ Metamorphose: to change into a different form.

² Latin for: hurry slowly.

wonderful.

[7] So we did actually not shrug our shoulders so much because of what you asserted to us, but more because of your zeal, and by that because of your voice that became too loud now and then, which would soon have attracted too many listeners. Let first this great Man of God Himself come to us and speak with us. Then we also will talk louder. Are we also not right if we prefer the more quiet cleverness to too much noise immediately at the beginning?"

[8] **The doctor said in a somewhat lower voice:** "Friends, he who has found and recognized the true God, as I have now, should just put his quiet cleverness aside, and show everyone the immeasurable great treasure that he found, so that also the blind ones would want the light of life.

[9] Since I am now very much convinced into the most inward fibers of my body and life of the great truth of my statement, I also do not fear any crowd anymore. No Greek, no Roman and even less a false pious Jew. Consider all those who are here just like us because of their sicknesses in this new cure resort, were they able to help me in the same miraculous manner as my loudly and openly professed God and Lord has helped me?

[10] But if the almightiness of His will has now so openly been confirmed to me, why should I, who can rely on His help, stay quiet before the powerless people? Should I perhaps be afraid to be called to account by one or the other because of my new confession that is based on a living experience? Truly, for this I would not even be afraid of the emperor.


[11] A tyrant can indeed kill my body, but cannot do anything anymore to the soul. But my God can make the dead alive again, and has our souls in His power. Otherwise He could not know at each moment our most secret thoughts, wishes and desires.

[12] Once someone has found the one, only true and almighty God so obviously true and clear, and who fears the powerless people more than God, is a fool. The one who wants to fear, let him fear God and never men for the sake of himself.

[13] Which man can grab and harm me when God's almighty hand

holds, covers and protects me? Let all furies and all Jewish devils – if they exist – come over me, and also all devouring animals, vipers and snakes. Will these perhaps be able to fight against God’s almightiness?”

30. THE DISCUSSION BETWEEN THE ROMAN SUPREME JUDGE AND THE GREEK DOCTOR

 **OW a prominent Roman** came, who had listened to the doctor for already some time, and said to him: “Friend, what kind of only true God have you found, for whose almightiness sake you have declared war before your more modest companions against all ancient gods, all men, all furies and devils, against the wild devouring animals, vipers and snakes, and in your fantasy perhaps also against the *nature* elements? You know the laws of Rome and its strict and relentless preservation, and I am a Roman supreme judge, and I have my men here. What would you say if I now, despite the almightiness of your new God, of whom you know for sure or hope that He will protect you, would nevertheless let you grab by my servants of justice and would throw you in a miserable dungeon? So justify yourself about your new, only true God, or this will happen to you what I have said.”

[2] **Full of manly audaciousness the doctor** said: “High judge, you also came here as a sick person, after you first went to all the gods and also to all the doctors, even to me at Melita, and were looking for help for your incurable lung disease. What would you say of someone whom we can see and talk to, who can heal in one moment by the miraculous power of his will, even at a distance, in such a way that you would be as perfectly and permanently healthy as you were never before in your youth?

[3] Would you make such person equal to us who cannot help each other anymore, and threaten him with your Roman power of justice? Or would you finally not say to yourself: ‘Look, that man is capable of doing what only a God, but never a human being

can do. So He must have in Himself also a perfect divine nature and be a divine Being’?

[4] Look, we have found such Person. Over there are standing 2 people who were healed by Him this morning on the mountain, only by His will. They brought us the good news. I am a doctor at Melita, as you will know because you yourself visited me a year ago because of my widely spread good reputation, and I have well recognized the incurability of your old affliction, as well as my own bad condition. I have, according to the conviction of my 2 friends, taken up a complete trust in myself of that true God-Man, and asked Him to help me in the same manner as He helped the 2 friends, if He still would maybe blissfully come today to this cure resort, as He had promised.

[5] But I hardly had loudly spoken out that wish before my companions of misfortune and place, fully trusting in the miraculous power of that God-Man, when there was as if a flash of lightning shooting through all the fibers of my body. And look, at that same moment I became as completely healthy as I never was before.

[6] That God-Man, high judge, about whom I am telling you now, does therefore not only possess the pure godly quality to heal every sickness by the almightiness of His will, but He also knows from a distance the most secret things that you think and feel in yourself, and He can therefore help you from the greatest distance.

[7] Can the emperor do that also with all his most brave legions, or our dumb Zeus, Apollo or any other god that is highly honored by you? If they could do that, then we certainly would not have entrusted ourselves in our old and last days to this cure resort of which we have heard many famous wonderful things. Despite all our many prayers and offerings to our gods we did not improve one hair. On the contrary, we became worse from day to day. And this so highly praised institution, in which you are staying already longer than I, has, according to me, not yet visibly improved your condition.

[8] Now if my new God, who according to my audacious statement

is the only true One and not the one who is invented by the old, selfish and lazy priests, would also help you as suddenly as He has helped me, then what would be your opinion about Him, and what kind of words would you certainly loudly thrust out of your mouth, coming from the deepest of your mind?”

[9] **Now the judge said:** “Yes, if this is the case, then everything has to be seen in a different perspective. I work in Tyre, and I also have heard already many things about a certain miraculous Savior who travels around in the Jewish land, and also that He spreads a totally new religion among the Jews, who receives a great following and who is therefore persecuted everywhere by the Jewish priests and their chiefs, but whom they nevertheless cannot catch. However, about the, according to you, definitely established divinity of Him, I have not heard anything yet.

[10] But no matter how, since He recently is staying in this place and even wants to visit this cure resort, I will at that opportunity also be able to know Him better.

[11] I know from our supreme governor Cyrenius and his subordinate advisors that they think highly of Him, but I do not know if they also consider Him as a God. This could secretly be so, but they will not talk openly about that, but only among themselves.

[12] Thus, I would advise you now as friend to keep it secret a little longer, and only talk loudly about it when more things will appear among the people of your God of truly divine nature, otherwise you could be in serious trouble, especially with the dark priests.

[13] I myself am now no more a friend of those lazy and moreover always malicious idol worshippers, for they stole from me many pounds of gold and a lot of pounds of silver, and all this for nothing, completely nothing. But woe the one who would dare to poke into their ancient nests of wasps, hornets and scorpions. I do not have to tell you more.”

[14] **Then the doctor said with glowing zeal:** “Friends, with the sure help of my new and only true God I dare to speak out loudly

the holy, great and living truth to all men, and they will not touch me. This conviction lives now already deeply in me, although I still did not receive the mercy to see my God and Lord personally. How much greater will be my courage when I will have seen Him and spoken to Him myself. May He quickly come to us now.”

31. THE DOUBTS OF THE JUDGE



I N this, the judge said: “I praise your zeal, and you are happy in your well-founded conviction. And if your Lord and God would also show me the mercy that He showed to you and your 2 companions, I certainly would speak the same words. But since we are now talking about this matter anyway, I just want to attract your attention on something.

[2] Look, your almighty Helper is – as far as His body is concerned – also a human being in whom much supernatural power resides which we cannot grasp, and which lived also before in the human being Moses, who was a foster child of a pharaoh, and which then also lived in many other prophets, as this is known to us from the Scripture of the Jews.

[3] All these exceptional men also performed great things and signs. Nevertheless, as far as their body is concerned, they all died. Whereto their souls have gone, no living being knows now with absolute certainty. It is believed indeed, for many valid logical reasons that the souls of many very great and virtuous men live on forever in a happy spiritual kingdom and that very pious men also associated oftentimes with such happy spirits. But I and certainly also you and several of your companions have no experience about this, and in this matter we must be satisfied in just believing it.

[4] If your new God would finally die anyway what concerns His body – in a violent manner among the vengeful hands of His many enemies, or just like any other man in a very natural way – would you then still remain with your assertion?”

[5] **The doctor said:** “Even stronger and more serious than now, for His body is certainly not His mightiest active being, but only

His, as it were, omnipresent active Spirit that must live forever. For if He would not live forever in the same might and power, then who has created a suitable body for Him by which He can be quite as visibly active now for us blind men as He was active as a pure Spirit since eternity?

[6] The fact that He helped me from a distance makes it obvious that it is not His to us visible body that is active, but only His Spirit, while His body was not present. So His active power and might are certainly not proceeding from His body, but from His eternal Spirit that is completely present everywhere.

[7] That spirit does not need the actual activity of the body, but if He nevertheless clothed Himself with a visible body, He certainly did it only to make Himself visible, more understandable and more accessible to us men who are completely blind in the spheres of the spirit, and to reveal to us His eternal will and its endless power and might in an understandable manner.

[8] When He will have reached the goal with us, calculated according to His endless wisdom, *and* undoubtedly out of pure love for us men, He will not need anymore His body that is now visible to us, and He will dispose from it in the manner that seems right to Him.

[9] If He also will allow His extremely blind and hardened enemies to lay their hands on His body, or that He will lay off His body in another way, will not change anything to my words. For one time He will be invisible again to us men, but still eternally active like He was active since eternity before assuming a body. For if He did not exist before, then no other existence would be imaginable.

[10] That He certainly is a Master and Lord over all existence and life I conclude from the fact that He must thoroughly and most clearly know about the healthy and sick arrangement of our body, *and this* into the smallest fibers, so that He then, with the power of His will can bring that which in the course of time became damaged, sick and unusable, into a healthy condition, and usable for the natural life, which I as an old and surely very experienced

doctor must certainly understand. For how could one give a suitable means to a sick person to recover his lost health if he would not first know what is wrong with him, and which part?

[11] But our perception, observation and opinion is and remains, despite all our experience, nevertheless extremely rough and disordered clumsy work, because it is impossible for us to see and evaluate the inner relationships of our physical life's machine in its numberless smallest parts. And therefore, with all our good knowledge and will, we are never capable to repair a serious disease, even not with the most powerful and most effective medicines, for we do not see the actual, maybe smallest sick spot in that extremely artful life's machine. However, the Creator and eternal Master of that machine can see everything in one glance and knows thus very precisely where the mistake is, and knows, as a result of His eternal all-wisdom, the right means that is present, and must be present, in His Spirit, in order to immediately restore the damaged part again into the right order and activate it.

[12] If you, dear friend, carefully thought about this, you also will realize that I cannot and will not turn away one hair's breadth from my first assertion, even if the body of my God would die a thousand times. For I am more convinced than my now very healthy existence that His body is not Himself, but only a means to reveal Himself more closely to us men than would be possible in a pure spiritual way. If He, for instance, would have touched me with His hands, and only after that I would have been completely healed, then maybe I would share your concern. But since – as I told you before – was healed from a distance, merely by His Spirit, He also will remain, without His body, the One He was since eternity.

[13] Take up my opinion really deeply into your mind as a full truth, and turn to a firm belief in the almightiness of His will. Ask Him also to heal your body, and then you will receive what I have received in miraculous way.”

[14] **The judge, who was completely amazed about the solid perception of the doctor, said:** “I thank you, dear friend, for this

teaching of yours. You have changed my mind completely, and I share now completely your opinion. O, if your and now also my only true God would also want to help me as He has helped you, I would praise His name only, *and this* throughout my whole life, and loudly proclaim His honor to everyone. O Lord, and now also my only true, almighty and living God, help also me from my already long lasting great suffering. Let Your holy will heal me.”

32. THE HEALING BY FAITH OF THE REPENTED JUDGE



WHEN the judge had openly spoken out these words, which were earnest and filled with a firm, unshakable trust from inside, there was as if a lightning running through his chest, and he became immediately healed, in such a way as he had never been before in his whole life. For already since his birth he was weak, and for that reason – although he was the son of a captain – he did not dedicate himself to military service but studied the laws of Rome and became a judge.

[2] After he became suddenly and completely healed, he also started to rejoice loudly, and he thanked Me, and also the doctor whose fearless words and deep life’s true speech had awoken such faith and trust in him.

[3] After he had quite exhausted himself from sheer praises of honor of My Being that was still very much unknown to him, he turned to the doctor again and said (**the judge**): “O, you my dear friend now, how can I reward you for the courage that you have shown me and for the truly not little effort you had to make because of my blindness. And how can I also reward these 2 companions of yours, who were the first to bring you the message of the personal presence of the great Master and of His true divinity? Tell me, you 2 dear friends, what did He tell you that one should do to remain sure of His mercy?”

[4] Then our **Polycarp** said: “Concerning this, He only said: ‘Keep the 10 commandments of Moses, and love God, the one and only true One above all in this manner, and your fellowman as yourself.

Do for them what you in a reasonable manner can expect that they would do for you. Furthermore, you should not let yourselves be tempted by the appealing enticements of the world, then you will stay in Me and I in you, and in this way you will have the eternal life through the spirit of My love in you, for I Myself am the Way, the Truth and the eternal Life. He who believes in Me and keeps My commandments, is the one who loves Me above all. To him I will come Myself. I will reveal Myself to him and give him eternal life.’ Look, this is the essence of His teaching.

[5] We still talked about many things with Him, and He thoroughly instructed us about many great things, about which we cannot talk now because they are so extensive, but we will find a good time for that.”

[6] The judge and the doctor thanked Polycarp for this announcement and they took the firm decision to act accordingly their whole life long.

[7] After this 2nd healing, also the other companions believed now completely in Me and asked Me also for the healing of their sick flesh and blood. And they also were suddenly helped, upon which there was almost no end to the jubilation and the praising of My name that was also announced by Polycarp.

[8] That attracted the attention of many cure guests who went to them and asked them what kind of peculiar thing had happened because of their continuous jubilation.

[9] **But the judge said:** “We also did not ask you why you are not jubilating. As long as the body is sick and also the soul, one does not like to rejoice, but when body and soul become completely healthy, there is every reason to rejoice.”

[10] **On this, a rich Jew, whose health had not improved much in this institution, said:** “How did you become so quickly healthy in this spot?”

[11] **The judge said:** “It is not very honorable to you as a Jew to ask us gentiles. You believe in the one, only true God, and we only began to believe in Him and asked for His help and He did not wait to help us, and for this reason we jubilate our thanks to your

God, who is and will remain now also our God. Why did you not turn in full faith to your God, so that He would help you also as He has unmistakably helped us?”

[12] **Completely astonished the Jew said:** “I have not read anywhere in the Scripture that our God has ever helped the uncircumcised gentiles.”

[13] **The judge said:** “And still, we also are alive and received everything from Him, and He let us rule over you. Then how can this be?”

[14] **When the Jew and several of his tribesmen heard that, they did not ask anything anymore, turned around and went away.**

[15] **However, those who were healed were very glad to be rid of these troublesome guests in this manner.**

[16] **Since I still did not come to the institution, and they were waiting for Me with great desire, they all decided to go and search for Me to give Me honor in the presence of all men. Therefore, they asked a servant of Marcus if I was still in the house of Marcus and if they could meet Me.**

[17] **The servant said:** “The Lord and Master is still in the house for the midday meal and relates wonderful things.”

[18] **For I related what had happened to these healed ones and what they had said, but the servant who served us before in the house and who was then sent by Marcus to the institution to get something, did not understand that, and therefore he also could not give an answer to the question of the healed ones, for he knew nothing about how the Greeks from Melita and the Roman judge were healed by the power of My will.**

[19] **Nevertheless, he said to those who asked him to come to Me (the servant):** “I still have a small thing to do here for my lord. After that, I will go back to the house and present your request, and will then right away bring you the answer of the great Lord and Master.”

[20] **The healed ones were satisfied with that. The servant went away and did what he had to do, came then into the house to us and told Me what the healed ones had asked.**

[21] I said to him “Go to My friends who asked you if I still was in the house and if they could come to Me, and tell them the following thing: He who is led to Me through love, may always come to Me, then I will accept him with the love that led him to Me.”

[22] After these words of Mine, the servant went again to the institution and told the healed ones, who went then directly with great joy and respect on their way to the house of Marcus.

33. THE HEALED ONES COME TO THE LORD



ENTERING our dining hall, they immediately asked the 2 Greeks where I was. And those pointed at once in the direction where that “I” was.

[2] Knowing that, they shyly walked to Me, looked with deep respect at Me and did not dare to speak to Me.

[3] However, I looked at them with full love and said in a very natural tone to them: “Why are you now so shy in My presence, My dear friends? Am I perhaps different from there in the institution where I came to you in the spirit and healed you from your afflictions according to your faith and trust? Take courage, come and sit with us at this table and first eat and drink as needed to strengthen your limbs. Only after that, we will continue to speak with each other.”

[4] The healed ones did with already more courage what I advised them to do, because My love made their fear to disappear more and more. A great number of excellently prepared fishes were on the table, and also bread and wine was not lacking. The healed ones were also already hungry and thirsty. Therefore, My invitation was for them a happy fulfillment of their wish that suited them well. They ate and drank according to their heart’s desire and had an ever greater childlike trust in Me and also in My disciples.

[5] Only after they had strengthened themselves at our table according to their need, the Greek **Polycarp**, who had become now the most courageous, asked Me: “O Lord and Master, although

You told us on the mountain that You would visit us in the institution – and we have waited – but still, You did not come. There are many in there whose condition is miserable and for whom Your visit would be really necessary.”

[6] I said: “Even if I did not come to you with My body, I still came to you with My love and helped those who turned to Me in faith and full trust. And so I kept the promise that I made to you.


[7] Because of the others, I personally had nothing to do in the institution. For they heard already many things about Me, and several among them saw also signs that I performed, *even* before their eyes. And knowing where to find Me, they still did not search for Me and did not pay attention to the signs, and even less to My words. Then why should I search for them and pay attention to them and care about their afflictions?

[8] However, I still will stay here for several days. The one who will search Me, will also quickly and easily find Me, as you have quickly and easily found Me.

[9] When this friend of Mine, the doctor from Melita, spoke loudly about Me according to the true understanding from the Heavens, he was listened at by many Jews, but only one Roman – a gentile – came close and began a conversation with the doctor about that new God, and he soon adopted his faith. The Jews however, soon noticed from the words of the doctor about whom he was talking. Therefore they quickly turned their back to him and did furthermore not pay attention to his definite wise words. Then why should I pay attention to them?

[10] When later you all loudly glorified Me, another blind Jew came to you who is a rich businessman and money changer in Capernaum. And when the judge gave him the right answer and noticed by that for whom that glorification was meant, he also turned his back on you and left you all. But if he has left you, who were with My Spirit, then he also has left Me. And the one who leaves Me, I also will leave, just as long as he repentantly and believingly will turn to Me again.”

34. THE LORD GIVES RULES OF CONDUCT FOR THE FAITHFUL

UT you all should remember: when you are gathered in My name – like before in the garden of the institution – then I also will always be active in your midst, with you and in you, just like before in the garden.

[2] The one who will listen to you, will also listen to Me, and I will be merciful to him. And a sick person, who will adhere to Me, will improve when you will lay your hands upon him in My name.

[3] The one who will accept you, will also accept Me in you. And therefore, I will forgive his sins and bless him for this time and for eternity. But the one who will not accept you, will also not accept Me, and his sins will remain in his soul, and My mercy will be far away from him.

[4] When you will go to someone in My name, and he listens carefully to you, and believes also what you tell him about Me, but after accepting My teaching he does not say to you from his heart: ‘Stay with me, dear friends, and eat together with me’, then do not stay there. For I will also be scanty with My blessing to the one who is scanty with you, while you were not scanty with My Word which is of the greatest value for the life of his soul. Because faith in Me becomes alive and active by the works of love.

[5] The one who will love you for the sake of My name, will also love Me, and I will love him in return, and My blessing will from then on be over him. However, the one who will hate and persecute you, will also hate and persecute Me in you. But it will be in vain that he will kick against the pricks¹, and will harm himself so terribly that by these wounds he will come into the death and the ruin of his soul.

[6] For the sake of My name and My Word, you should not ask for yourselves any honor or reward from no one, but the one who will dishonor you and will harden his heart against you, will do that

¹ As an ox kicking back against the pricks of the pointy stick of his owner (see also Acts 26:14).

also against Me, and I will also be like that against him.

[7] What I give to you for nothing, give that also for nothing to others. But that which is offered by the love of enlightened people, accept it, and thank Me for it. For it is only My love in the heart of men who will give it to you. And thus do also not despise the smallest gift.

[8] However, never seek earthly gain for the sake of My name and word, neither any worldly kingdom of worldly rulers. For firstly, My Kingdom is not of this world, and secondly, by receiving the earthly gain that you sought to receive, and having received a kingdom of this world, you would have already received the reward of life for your soul, and then you should not expect any further reward from Me from the Heavens.

[9] Although in later times there will be false, imperious prophets who will do the same thing in My name as now the Pharisees and their followers, and they will honor Me in the eyes of the people with all kinds of ceremonies and with gold, silver and noble stones¹, but through the mouth of those who are awakened by My Spirit I will say to them: ‘Look, this miserable people honors Me, the Lord of Life, with the dirt and with the death and the judgment of matter, but their heart is far away from Me.’ That is why I also will be far away from such people.

[10] Therefore, you also should in future times not build any temples and altars for Me, for I will never live in the temples that are made by human hands, and I will not let Myself be honored on altars. He who loves Me and who will keep My simple commandments, is My living temple. And his heart, full of love and patience, is the true and living offering altar to My honor, which is the only thing that is pleasing to Me. All the rest is judgment, death and ruin.

[11] You know that all priests – our Jewish as well as your gentile priests – have now certain external means for the sanctification and purification, and that they force their followers to accept and

¹ precious stones.

use them, and that they threaten, with the most terrible and worst temporary and eternal punishments, those who would not accept the use of the formerly mentioned means and would call them void and completely meaningless. But I say to you: all these things should be banned with you for all future times, and the one who wants to use, even in My name, such means for the sanctification and purification, I will look at him with wrathful eyes. It is sufficient that you baptize the one who has accepted My teaching in his heart, and give him a name for the sake of the order, and then I will strengthen him.

[12] Furthermore, you also can give, if you have, from time to time bread and wine – also in My name and in My love that is in you – to those who actively believe in Me and keep My commandments as a remembrance to Me. When you will keep such meal of love among yourselves, I also will be in your midst, with you and in you, like now in flesh and blood. Because the bread that you will give because of your love for Me, will be the same as My flesh, and the wine the same as My blood that soon will be shed for many. How? That you will hear later.

[13] That only, should be sufficient to you as an outer sign, which will however only have true value for Me because of the love.

[14] Since I have instructed you now in these important things, we will now stand up from the table and go outside to our mountain. There, still many things will be shown and given to you.”

[15] After this speech, they all thanked Me, and we stood up and climbed swiftly on the mountain.

35. THE HEAVYHEARTEDNESS OF THE ROMAN AT THE BEAUTIFUL VIEW



WHEN we came on the mountain, the Greeks and the Roman admired the beautiful environment.

[2] **The Roman** said: “Truly, I have never seen such landscape that is so marvelous into all directions. If we always could stay young, strong and healthy on this precious Earth, and be provided with all the necessary things, then we also could forever rejoice in such environment.

[3] But at the sight of such beautiful landscape, the human mind is often filled with a great heavyheartedness when he always has to think by that: ‘only a short time is this joy granted to you, and then you painfully will have to leave it forever.’ But what can weak man do against this, except sighing? Because he so quickly will have to leave a life that is often, also on this Earth, very nice and pleasant, and will no more be able to view and enjoy the charms and beauties of such marvelous environments of this Earth. But this is the way You want it, o Lord and Master, and the poor, powerless human being must comply with the almightiness of Your will.”

[4] **I** said: “Friend, now again, the old, blind Roman and gentle out of you has spoken, and despite your exemplary strong and active faith and trust in Me, you have shown that you really are still not initiated in the secrets of the true, inner life of the soul.

[5] Do you perhaps think that the soul will not be able to also view the regions of this Earth without the help of his material body, provided that he is perfected according to My order that is clearly shown to you and that he will leave his heavy body in this way?

[6] Who is it that can see now this landscape, although imperfectly, through the 2 little windows under your forehead? For sure, only your only living soul. Because the body was only given to him for a short time as an instrument in order to acquire and secure for himself, through the right use of it, the full freedom

of life and independence forever. He who feels, hears, sees, smells, tastes, thinks and wills in the body is surely the immortal being of the soul and not the dead body in itself, which apparent life would not be possible without the true life of the soul.

[7] If your soul can see now the beautiful landscapes of this Earth through your body, with all the limitations of his life, and can feel real joy about it, only by viewing the most outer form, he will feel an even greater joy and delight when he will be able to view, evaluate and understand, with his brighter eyes, not only the outer shell of the beings and things, but the whole interior in its most wonderful connection, action and meaning.

[8] Yes, he who is still so deeply buried in his flesh, so that he will feel as if pulled along into death during the certain death of his body – which is the result of his too great love for the world and the flesh – then man must of course speak as pitifully as you *have spoken now*, My friend. But once man, in whom the soul is free from the earthly dross according to My teaching and My will, and who became by that more perfect and perfected, will speak quite differently and exaltedly at the view of such environment and landscape.

[9] A natural human being, as you are still now – although you can view now with your eyes, and hear with your ears, the Lord and Master of all existence and life – if he becomes heavyhearted at the sight of a beautiful environment, because the feeling of his perishability awoke in him, then this is only very beneficial for his soul. Because that feeling is the immortal Spirit from Me in the soul of every human being, without which he would not possess a life. That Spirit cries out to the soul: ‘Do not love the world for the sake of its outer charms, for they are all subject to death and perishability. Take courage and turn away your lustful eye from that which is nothing in itself. Instead of that, turn inwardly in your deepest inner self, in Me, your true existence and eternal life. Then you will not only see and recognize the dead, outer shell of the things and beings, but excellently *see and recognize* that which is in them and which is active, and how and why, and what ultimate

goal they have.’

[10] Tell Me now, friend, if this is so, and can really not be otherwise, does a human being, who has received understanding about his being and existence, have actually any reason to become heavyhearted in himself at the sight of a charming outer form because he once will have to put off his decaying body?”

36. THE WISH OF THE ROMAN



N this, the Roman, whose mind was already in a much better mood, said: “Master of all life and existence, when someone finds in himself to be in Your eternal clarity of existence and life, and views the big world in the beyond with the same power of light as You, that penetrates everything, then certainly not the least of heavyheartedness will be stirred up in him at the sight of such beautiful environment. But when man is heavyhearted he cannot be blamed so much, because we humans are shortsighted, especially regarding the inner life of the spirit and the soul. For how can a person, who was born in complete darkness of life and who was then brought up, have any notion and perspective about the true, inner being of the life of the soul, because already since his very early childhood he was only involved with matter and its various forms?”

[2] For sure, by Your mercy, help and great compassion, things will become quite different with me now. But up till now, my body and soul were still so much completely one that it seemed quite impossible to me – as well as for many thousands of other people – that a soul could exist on its own without a body. For I imagined the soul, who thinks in me, as a product of the activity of the heart, the lungs and the other inward organs, for when this activity ends, then ends also the feeling, hearing, seeing, smelling, tasting, observing, thinking, evaluating and acting.

[3] Besides, I myself never noticed anything that, even by far, seemed to be an existence of a soul after the death of the body, although other people told me many things about it. For if I

– since I also am a human being – was not able to convince myself of something, I could not just purely believe in it. And so, I really cannot be blamed when the thought about a coming death always stirs up heavyheartedness in me, especially at the sight of a beautiful landscape like this one.

[4] If ever I would have been able to see and speak to my many friends and acquaintances who died already a long time ago, I also would not have been taken by heavyheartedness at the sight of such beautiful landscape in the manner as this had been the case with me for a long time. My lung disease, which could not be healed by any doctor on Earth, and my old age, which did not give any prospect for a long life anyway, actually contributed to it, and so I became a straight enemy, of life, of the beauties of nature and the young, cheerful youth.

[5] Now, during Your visible presence, o Lord and Master, it is of course quite different, because now I know by Your divine mouth how things are with man after the death of his body, and this took away almost completely my fear and fright for death that tormented me already such a long time, about which I thank You from the deepest of my heart.

[6] If moreover I could see and speak to someone of my deceased friends – which You, o Lord and Master of the sensorial and spiritual world can certainly accomplish – then my mind would be even more in order. That You can easily do that, I do not doubt in the least, but if it also would be allowable according to Your wisdom and order, that You only can know, and also the person to whom You told it. If this would be allowable, then I would like to ask You.”

[7] **I said: “It is possible and also allowable for people who have become already mature for it. Because people who have become already strong in their own spirit cannot harm anymore the still very impure souls if they have to show themselves in this world, but only those who are still immature in their spirit.**

[8] **All your friends and acquaintances who were separated from the sensorial world would not be a pleasant appearance if I would**

show them all to you. Therefore, I only want to present a few somewhat better ones to you. Then you can speak with them yourself about their condition in the beyond.

[9] If you still seriously want this, I am willing to make it possible for you for a short time, then you not only will be able to see and speak to your best friends, but you also will be able to see how the world, in which they live and act, looks like and how it is arranged.”

[10] **The Roman** said: “O Lord and Master, please give me this grace.”

[11] **I** said: “Well, so be it, and so it will be done.”

37. THE ROMAN SPEAKS WITH HIS DECEASED FATHER



HARDLY had said that when 4 armed Romans stood before our judge, who were not only visible to him but also to all the others who were present, and they became really scared of them because they looked at them with eyes that were glowing from anger. At first he did not have the courage to speak to them. Only after I told him that he should speak to those who appeared, he asked one of them – who was his father – if his life really continued after the death of his body, and how.

[2] Then **the spirit** said with a screeching voice, which was very well known to his son: “Stupid fool of a son, what is this that you disturb our rest, our love and our activity?

[3] That we continue to exist and have actually never completely died, you surely can see with your eyes full of dirt. We were just preparing a great campaign and we have haste to take advantage of the enemy, and now you want to hinder this glorious heroic deed for my emperor. I just would like to chop you, stupid scoundrel, with my sharp sword into a thousand pieces.

[4] If that dumb magician of Nazareth, to whom your stupidity gives godly honor, would not stand behind you with His skill, your stupidity would cost you dearly. But delaying is not renouncing. When you will leave your bag of flesh and come to us, you surely

will receive the reward for your stupidity.”

[5] **Very faintheartedly, our Roman said:** “How could I have disturbed you in your rest, since you do not seem to have any rest in going to war. And if the Man here next to me is only a dumb magician of Nazareth, then why do you obey His will. Are you as heroes not mightier than He?”

[6] **The spirit said:** “What do you, dumb stupid, understand of our things. We do what we want and do not allow anyone to give us orders.”

[7] **The judge said:** “If you are that mighty, then why do you stay here and do you not think that the enemy is gaining advantage over you now? Do you then not believe that there is only one almighty God, against whose will your futile weapons can eternally do nothing?”

[8] **The spirit said:** “Do you perhaps think that we, perfected people in our big world, which has no beginning and no end, are still as blind as you, moles and blindworms of this dirty Earth that is not much bigger than a hazelnut? Where did there ever exist a God apart from us? We are the gods, and our great emperor is the main god, and I am now also standing in line to become an emperor, because there are now already a great number of emperors with us.”

[9] **The judge said:** “Yes, then finally everyone among you can become an emperor?”

[10] **Being completely blown up by pride, the spirit said:** “Know, you stupid, that there will never be an emperor coming out of the common people, because the people are only there to always work and fight for us in the sweat of their face, so that all glory and all good life would only befall indisputably on us. We give laws for the sake of ourselves, and the people have to follow these under *the threat* of the most severe punishment. If one from the common people would dare to speak even one wrong word against us, he will be punished for high treason by death, for we are the only ones who have the right to slaughter everything that displeases us in the least. We also can kill at will our servable people, and not one sage

has the right to ask us if this was justified or unjustified, for only that what we want and do is right. Everything that goes against that is a punishable crime.”

[11] **That was a little too much for our judge, and being greatly exited, he said:** “O you extremely blind souls, how endlessly far away are you from the inner truth of life. How do you want to kill someone in your world, since death can impossibly exist anymore with you?”

[12] **The spirit said:** “All the better. If here with us, a common soul, after being torn up into pieces, will gather himself and continue to live, then he can be grabbed and be torn up into pieces again.”

[13] **The judge said:** “Then what about the glory of your world?”

[14] **The spirit said:** “Stupid, open your dirty eyes and see.”

[15] **Then the judge saw a very dark environment in which all kinds of castles could be seen. Apart from those castles were a big number of dirty huts. And furthermore he saw a crowd of people who looked very poor. He also saw warriors, equipped with all kinds of weapons, and in a greater distance he also saw camps, and outside of these, battles.**

[16] **Then he asked Me (the judge):** “O Lord and Master, bring me again into the condition in which I cannot see anymore the souls who live in the beyond, for if all souls have to expect such condition after the death of their body, it would be a thousand times better for man if he were never created or born.”

[17] **Then I immediately took away the ability of the Roman to see the lower, dirty world of impure souls. And when the very evil spirits had suddenly left and had become invisible, I asked him:** “Well now, friend, did you well recognize your relatives, regarding their form, speech and character? How did you like them?”

[18] **The Roman and also the doctor said:** “O Lord and Master, this is certainly more than awful.”

[19] **Then the Roman continued to speak alone like this:** “I immediately recognized my father, for he was the same extremely proud Roman that he was during his physical life. He who was not

an aristocrat meant less to him than a wandering dog without a master, and I, who was weak, as far as my body was concerned, and thus unsuitable for the military service that he exalted above all, was not his favorite. But still, I had to be someone before whom the whole people had to tremble, and therefore I always was placed in Asia that was always inclined for rebellion, with the assignment to act against the transgressors with the extreme severity of the law, which however I, as a more or less suffering human being, did not do. For I thought to myself: 'You also are human beings just like me, despite the unrestrained pride of my relatives, and you are tormented over and over. I surely want to judge according to justice and fairness, but you will not be tormented with tyrannical severity by me.' And that is why I was always loved by the supreme governor.

[20] When father was still a citizen of this world and came once to Tyre, he asked me with his screeching, imperious voice how many men were already beheaded because of my severe jurisdiction, and how many were already crucified. And I answered him completely according to the truth: 'No one until now, for luckily there never was a well-founded reason for it yet.'

[21] Then he said to me with eyes that were really glowing from anger: 'You were, are and will remain a stupid fool. If you want to keep up an ever increasing respect for the law, you still must give an example from time to time, even if no one has transgressed the law. If there are no criminals, you must take with force the first one you can find, out of the crowd, accuse him of a crime, confirm it by hired witnesses and then do your job, severely and relentlessly. By that, you will incite a true respect for the law with the people, and by that you can acquire great honor with the emperor.'

[22] Then I said: 'But we secretly received from the emperor the order not to torment someone with the too sharp severity of the law when there is not sufficient reason for it. A soldier and commander can act like that indeed, but this can absolutely not be done in the peaceful sphere of the citizens.'

[23] Then father said again, with a despising smile: “You were, are and will remain a stupid fool”, turned his back on me and left me with apparent haste, and later I never saw him again. A couple of years later I received the message from Rome that he died. And I truly could not mourn for him.

[24] As he was during his physical life, so he is still now, but his idolization of the emperor is much worse.

[25] O Lord and Master of all existence and life, will such a soul eternally never improve? Will he never more receive a better understanding – and the crowd of souls in the beyond who conform themselves to him, neither?”

[26] **With a friendly face I said:** “Friend, with God all things are possible, even if they seem for man on this Earth ever so impossible. However, the ‘how’ and ‘when’ you will only understand when My Spirit of eternal love and truth in your soul will reveal it to you personally.”

[27] **The Roman was satisfied with that, and thought more deeply about what he had seen and what I had said.**

38. THE LORD EXPLAINS ABOUT THE SITUATION IN THE BEYOND



Now the doctor from Melita turned to Me with the words: “Lord and Master, since we all have exactly seen and heard the same thing, was this appearance that was allowed by You, really completely true and not a dreamlike appearance in an awake condition, like I repeatedly experienced with several of my patients, especially in a place where 5 sick people with fever saw also similar beings in one and the same room. But the beings they saw did by far not correspond, because each patient saw totally different beings. And they heard them also speak in a different language. And I had the impression that the beings that were seen by my feverish patients corresponded to those in a dream, which is nothing else than only an empty game of the strongly increased fantasy, heated up by the blood that

streams faster through the veins.

[2] But during this appearance, that was allowed by You on a clear daylight, no one of us was suffering from fever, and thus also no fast heart beating and no heated up fantasy. And we all heard and saw the same thing, and that is why this appearance, as already mentioned, really seemed to be true.

[3] But now the question is: is that dark and dirty environment that we all saw as the same, still localized on this Earth with all the things that we saw in it, or was it only visible for us as an image that corresponds to a condition – more or less like an image of a dream – based on the unreliable fantasy of the spirits that we saw? And were the other spirits whom we also saw in that environment, souls of people who once had lived on this Earth, or do they also belong to the kingdom of the evil fantasy of the spirits whom we saw close to us? For while we were watching the sad environment in the beyond, it was strange that we also could see the environment of this Earth through it without any obstruction. And at the same time we saw the sad beyond also very clearly from point to point. And finally the question comes up from itself: can the spirits, whom we saw, also see our Earth or only their fantasy world?”

[4] **I said:** “The spirits whom you saw here – and still many thousands of their kind – possess perfect reality. They live in those castles and strongholds, which you saw in that dirty-dark environment. The environment, all the castles and strongholds, the dirty huts, the tents, the poor-looking subordinate spirits and the encampment with the soldiers, are nothing else except the bad products of their evil fantasy, especially the environment and its arrangement. For if you can imagine 1,000 as a unity, then the poor spirits, whom you saw, are real for one thousandth part. So for the greatest part they belong to the sphere of the evil, deceitful fantasy of the spirits whom you saw, and for one thousandth part they still possess more or less a true spiritual reality. Like on Earth, your shadow also belongs to your actual reality. Although a shadow is in the abstract certainly not something actually existent, but still, it

would not be there if you yourselves were not there first.

[5] The poor spirits whom you saw are for the greatest part also already in the beyond, but partly they still live physically on this Earth. However, the real spirits, whom you saw, together with their congeners, full of self-love, pride and lust for power, were during their earthly life as rulers in contact with many thousands of subordinate people. And because of that, their images – or in a certain way their shadow images – were left in a weakened form in the consciousness of their soul.

[6] The evil spirits whom you saw, together with still many others who are completely similar to them, hardly possess the smallest spark of the light of the full truth in them, and can thus also not see or perceive anything of what is truly outside of them. Just like when somebody who is deeply asleep cannot see or perceive anything of what is in reality around him. That is why they only can see in their inner, extremely weak deceitful light what is created by their fantasy – coming forth from their evil self-love – and this with the help of the remembrance that is kept in their consciousness.

[7] What they have created can be seen by every perfected spirit. And if such perfected spirit will now and then, with his will and vision out of My will and light, come in a certain way close to such evil group, or will pay attention to them, then he will know, through the deceitful apparent environment, that is immediately and entirely visible to him, of what kind the actual real spirits of a group are and what character they have. And so, such evil spirits can impossibly cover up or hide their inner evilness before the eyes of perfected spirits.

[8] Here in this world, a wolf can show himself in sheep's clothing, but in the other world it will be proclaimed to him, loudly and openly from the rooftops, of what he thinks, wants and does in the most inner part of his house.

[9] And since every perfected spirit can do that, he also can – thanks to his wisdom and might – effectively confront, with the most suitable means, all the evil that was planned.

[10] Depending on the power of their evil self-love, such group must often sink down into the deepest ground of the kingdom of evil, and greatly destroy themselves and as if bringing themselves to ruin. Only after that, there is a small possibility to gradually more and more ascend again to the light of the truth.

[11] And this is also what will happen to the spirits whom you saw. However, if there are some among them who will begin to see the uselessness of their strivings through all kinds of corresponding appearances that are allowed by Me, then they also will more easily ascend to the light of the truth.”

[12] Now **the doctor** asked Me further: “O Lord and Master, how is it actually possible for such evil spirit to greatly destroy himself and bring himself to ruin?”

[13] **I** said: “Just like in the course of time when all matter will destroy itself, will bring its outer visible form to ruin and then return to its true initial element.

[14] For these spirits, that which was created by their evil fantasy is a firm, material reality. And that which seems to be will remain as long as the remembrance of the spirit, and the fantasy that comes from it, will not be broken up and harmed by the continuously increasing passions. If that happens, then his world with all its castles, strongholds and treasures will also immediately disappear.

[15] It can be compared with someone who has a treasure that is precious above all to him, and has buried it in a certain place, which place he has well remembered, but because he is ever more burdened by the worry that this treasure could be discovered by someone else, he gradually falls into an ever increasing spiritual confusion. His memory becomes weaker and weaker, and also his remembrance and his fantasy. He moreover falls into a kind of brain fever, which takes away his whole memory and remembrance, in such a way that he is no more capable to remember his treasure that he had so truthfully and so well hidden. Now what does this treasure still mean to him? Where has it gone? Look, it disappeared out of his existence. And this is what also

happens to these spirits with their world.

[16] As man loses in fact everything with the loss of his memory and remembrance – even if it still exist as such – so also a spirit will lose everything that his fantasy had created out of his remembrance that stayed in his consciousness. And such spirit will then be extremely poor and abandoned of everything.

[17] Then only, in such condition, it is possible for a wise spirit to approach him in the most suitable manner. And he will show him and make him understand what is useless, and also the bad and the evil *that came* by his own free will, and bring him, unnoticed and gradually, to walk on the way of light.

[18] But as fast as you, My friend, imagine it now, such spirit will not attain to the full light. For as soon as he reaches this kind of freer consciousness, so that he will remember several things, his old fantasy will come up again. And with this, he soon will create again a world for himself that corresponds to his old love, and he is pleased with that. So he has to lose his self-created paradise again and understand the unreality of it, after which he can again be placed on a higher level of light.

[19] This happens oftentimes with many spirits like you saw here. Because a wrong love – which, despite all the things that are wrong in it, is the only thing that brings about the self-awareness of a spirit's life – cannot so easily and quickly be transformed into a real, true love through the necessary way of the free will, as you imagine.”

39. THE GUIDANCE OF THE HUMAN SOULS UNTO COMPLETION



OW you think by yourself: ‘Yes *but*, the divine wisdom and almightiness should be very well capable to do this.’
But I say to you: if I would want that, then it also would not have been necessary for Me to ever come Myself in the flesh as a Son of Man on this Earth and as a teacher to teach you men, and it also would not have been necessary in the beginning of times to

awake all kinds of wise men and prophets for you.

[2] For if, only through My almightiness, you could have been transformed into children who are like Me in everything, then I certainly would have done that. But since you never could have been transformed into free, independent children who are like Me in everything while being continually kept in the leading-strings of My almightiness, but would always have remained the same as all the other material beings, like the clay, the air, the water, the stones, metals, plants and all kinds of animals, it must be as it is, and not different, which I as Creator of all things and beings can of course see most clearly. For – understand this well – the creation of gods is something quite different than the creation of suns, worlds and all the other beings in the whole endless space of creation. Did you well understand this now?

[3] That is why man comes in this world entirely without any knowledge and science, and he must be taught in everything, while the animals bring already everything they need into the world to maintain their life.

[4] When man comes into this world, he is, what concerns his soul, completely separated from God's almightiness, and in every respect he has to rely on his own will and knowledge. Only when he comes to know God through education from his parents and other wise teachers, when he will turn trustingly to Him and beg Him for help and assistance, begins also from the part of God the inflow through all the Heavens. Then the soul of man will pass into an ever increasing knowledge, and from that, an ever increasing love for God. He makes his own will subordinate to that of God and unites himself in this manner with the Spirit of God. He thus will become gradually as perfect in and by the Spirit of God within him as the divine Spirit itself, and will nevertheless stay completely free and independent in everything, as God as such is eternally perfectly free and independent.

[5] Now with your rather enlightened worldly reason you think: 'But when every perfected soul will become in a certain way as perfect as I am Myself, can this in time not lead to some kind of

war of the gods, and who will finally be victorious?"

[6] Look, this can be imaginable with earthly people who are uneducated and oftentimes still greatly afflicted with all kinds of deceitful love for the world and self-love, and it also would be very possible – as worldly history proves very clearly – but in the true Kingdom of God, this is not imaginable and not possible at all. For how could someone come into a fight with the eternal initial truth in God when he himself stands in the perfect truth of God, and understands that nothing is possible without it?

[7] For if it were possible that for instance an angel spirit would come into a fight with an initial godly truth – since it constitutes his being – then he would thereby not fight and battle with God, but only with himself, and would thus harm no one but himself.

[8] Did you ever experience on Earth that for instance 2 people who are well knowledgeable in arithmetic, fought against each other because according to the arithmetical system, which is accepted in the whole world, 2 completely equal unities with again 2 completely equal unities result in a total of 4 unities? Look, all men, who can somehow count, completely agree on that, and will with a somehow clear insight certainly never quarrel and fight about that, for also for the sake of their own advantage they must acknowledge that this arithmetic truth is valid everywhere and every time.

[9] This is also the case with all perfected souls in the Kingdom of God. They all are permeated with one and the same truth, because it comes as light from their love for God and fellowman.

[10] As long as men can quarrel, fight and war among each other, they still are far from the Kingdom of God. And they will not enter it before they have grown unchangeably in all patience, humility, meekness and true neighborly love. But once they are like that, and will thereby, in themselves come to the truth out of God, then all quarrel, fight and war will finish forever, and your war of the gods can eternally never happen. Do you understand that?"

40. THE LORD CALLS RAPHAEL TO EXPLAIN THE EXISTENCE OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD



HE doctor said: “O Lord and Master, now everything is clear to me, and we thank You, firstly because You have revealed so clearly the world of the spirits to us, and we know now how the further life of the souls of men with a worldly attitude will take form and must take form in the big world of the beyond. And secondly we thank You, o Lord and Master, for Your explanation about the condition of the perfected spirits in God’s Kingdom.

[2] It would of course also be desirable to have a look into the nature of the Kingdom of God and see its inhabitants who are already blessed. But since Your mercy and love has explained it with such clear words that we almost could simply see it with our eyes, I would consider it too bold to desire from You to show us also the world of the blessed spirits in the beyond. And therefore, we thank You once again for the great mercy that You have abundantly given to us.”

[3] **I said:** “Yes, My friend, to show you the nature of God’s Kingdom, in which are located numberless blessed spirits for already *long* times and eternities that are unimaginable for you, is still not possible for no one of you. Not until the Kingdom of God will have completely developed and has become a visible truth of light in you.

[4] However, when the Kingdom of God will take form in yourselves, coming to full activity according to My will that was revealed to you, then you will also see it and experience great pleasure on it. But since you all have set out to do completely My will – with the exception of one whom I admonished often and who still cannot give up his greediness – I will call a blessed angel here, who has been perfected for already a long time. Then he will explain to you further about the nature of the Kingdom of God.”

[5] Then **I** called aloud: “Raphael, come and serve Me and your

brothers!”

[6] I hardly had said that when **Raphael** stood there before Me with a serious and friendly face that was truly shining with utter heavenly beauty, and he said: “My Lord and My God. Your will is my existence, my eternal life and my wisdom and power. Allow that these brothers will see Your will as Your Kingdom in me.”

[7] When especially the Greeks and our Roman saw Raphael, they were really speechless, and in their heart they were utterly surprised about the extremely marvelous form of the angel. Moreover, his short speech to Me, full of spirit, truth and life, made such deep impression on their mind that they really did not know what they now had to do with this perfected angel spirit.

[8] Also the innkeeper of Jesaira who was still present, the skipper and the leader of the known fishing village were extremely surprised about the very sudden appearance of Raphael, and they also did not know what they had to do about and with him in such surprisingly short time. For firstly, his very sudden appearance surprised them, and secondly his loveliness was sticking out sky-high above every notion and imagination they ever had about the greatest beauty of a human form.

[9] They all could not keep their eyes of him, and **the doctor** said to himself: “No, No, this in itself is already too much bliss in the Kingdom of God. Because by looking at such highly perfected, beautiful human form, 1,000 years would go by as fast as a fleeting moment for every human being.”

[10] And more of them thought the same.

[11] After being amazed for quite some time, **our doctor** took courage again and said to Me: “Lord, Lord and Master, it would be good to be here for eternity, and I for myself would never desire any still higher bliss of life. But since You, by Your endlessly great love and mercy, made appear this as such already utterly perfected spirit, as it were in blazing love for us, and since he has spoken aloud in the midst of us all, I would, if possible and permissible, like to speak with him about the nature of the Kingdom of God.”

[12] **I** said: “That is why I called him. You can speak with him now as with one of your companions. Go to him and speak with him.”

41. THE NATURE OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD



WHEN our doctor went very cautiously to Raphael, who was in the mean time in discussion with Kisjona and Philopold about a few things concerning the near future, bowed deeply before him and said: “You who are a high spirit from the Heavens, and blessed friend of the One who is now among us as a human being who assumed flesh and blood, and who testifies of Himself by His words and by His deeds that the initial everlasting, extremely wise and almighty Spirit of the sole and only God lives in Him, would you like to tell me something about the nature of the Kingdom of God, in such a way that it would be understandable for me, a still imperfect human being.”

[2] **Raphael said:** “Yes, friend, you do not have to stand so shyly before me, for then I cannot reveal that much about the nature of the Kingdom of God. Because a soul who is shy is actually not capable to absorb deeper truths in him, neither can he clearly understand them for the benefit of his divine Spirit that should become awake in him. So take courage and consider me as your brother who also carried the flesh of this world before. Then we easily will be able to talk with one another.”

[3] **After these few words, the doctor took more courage and said to Raphael:** “Look, now I am already more courageous than before when your sudden appearance by the call of the Lord had greatly surprised me. And now I am ready to hear a correct explanation from you about what the Kingdom of God actually is. Please tell me, high and extremely blessed spirit from the Heavens of the Lord.”

[4] **Then Raphael said:** “Then Listen, my dear friend and brother in the name and love of the Lord. On the one hand you are, as a doctor from Melita who is now healed, a truly wise man, because

in the cure resort, when the Lord healed you on your request, you were the first to recognize Him most correctly as the one and only true God, and now your faith is so firm, permeating your whole being, that not one appearance in the world could take you away from it, and this is to the honor of your soul and heart. But since you have recognized the most important and greatest truth of live so quickly in the light of your former gentile darkness, it is now somewhat strange that you did not sooner and easier recognize the nature of the Kingdom of God than *you have recognized* the Lord from His works, without having seen Him before nor having talked to Him.

[5] Because by far, it was not the fact that you had heard about an exceptional Man of Nazareth who was now here, and was able – as they said – to miraculously heal you like many others, that gave you the conviction that it was the Lord Himself who was behind it, but it was your spirit that revealed the greatest and the holiest of all truths to you.

[6] But where is your spirit now that should say to you: ‘How can you ask now what the Kingdom of God is? Why can you not see the forest between the trees? Is the nature of the Kingdom of God in the first place not very clearly there where the Lord Himself is personally present and active?’

[7] When you will have completely set out to do the will of the Lord and will be completely permeated with His Spirit, then at bright daylight you will be able to see in the Kingdom of God within you, which you can now only vaguely see with the eyes of your body.

[8] Look, and understand, everything you see now in the whole world, represents the nature of the Kingdom of God. You should not think that the Kingdom of God is located in one or the other place. The Kingdom of God is everywhere in the whole eternal infinity, and man who realizes this from the Spirit of the Lord, has the Kingdom of God in him, and he is everywhere in the Kingdom of God and in the full nature thereof, no matter where he is or stays or is active, or if he still is in his body or in his pure soul as a

spiritual being.

[9] You are still in your body now, and I am in my pure being as a spiritual person, and we both are located in one and the same truly existent Kingdom of God. The very little difference is only that I am forever perfectly and clearly aware of it in myself, but you still imperfectly, and that is why you still cannot see your brothers and sisters who are blessed and purely spiritual for already a long time, except in a clear dream. However, when you will be still more perfect than now, they will not be hidden for your eyes.

[10] That you can see me now, is also because your spirit is already so much awakened that from a distance it has recognized in the God-Man Jesus of Nazareth the only, true, eternal Spirit of God. And otherwise it would not be so easy for you to see me and speak to me. Do you understand now what the Kingdom of God actually is?"

[11] **The doctor was totally amazed about the clear wisdom of Raphael, and said:** "O lovely, immortal friend and brother. You have now taken away a terrible blindfold from my eyes. Actually, man always sees the least what is put right before his eyes. I truly sought what I had in my hand. I thank you for the light that you gave me. Let me now think about it for a while. Then we will continue this discussion."

[12] **Raphael said:** "You can do that. Then it will be completely clear in your soul."

42. THE NATURE OF RAPHAEL



WHEN the doctor went to his companions and spoke with them in a very wise manner about what he heard from Raphael about the existence and the nature of the Kingdom of God.

[2] Raphael spoke again with Kisjona and Philopold about the future conditions of the Kingdom of God on this Earth and also about the reasons for allowing them.

[3] And I was in conversation with the Roman who could not

understand Raphael's sudden appearance, and at first he almost thought within himself that he was the pagan god Apollo, but I quickly dissuaded him from that delusion.

[4] Then also the Roman wanted to talk to Raphael, but he did not want to disturb the conversation of the 2 formerly mentioned friends.

[5] When the doctor had ended the extensive conversation with his companions about what Raphael had told him, he took courage again, went to Raphael and asked him for a further enlightenment of his soul.

[6] **Raphael said to him:** "Yes, my dear friend and brother, this cannot be given to you in the same manner as one lightens a room at night by igniting the lamp and then let it shine for everyone who are staying in that room. For as long as the ignited light is burning, the room will surely be illuminated, but as soon as there is no more oil, the room will be dark again. However, if the room must never more become dark, then more is needed than to ignite just one lamp, filled with a little oil.

[7] In rooms this is a difficult matter, because the times that certain wise men among the people knew the art how to make an everlasting fire that would never burn up, are over. And therefore, in these times, the rooms can only be constantly illuminated at night by filling the lamps inside with so much oil that every lamp would have sufficient nourishment for the whole night, and for this, an intelligent calculation is needed that is based on experience. And this is how an intelligent man, who is concerned about the salvation of his soul in this dark, nightly time, must provide himself with a lot of spiritual oil, so that it will be sufficient until the dawn of his inner spiritual day of the true, eternal life, which is the ancient, eternal light in man that will never burn up. And in this manner he always will have sufficient light in this room of his earthly life.

[8] The spiritual oil consists in the first place of the word of the Lord, and from that, of the good works of love according to the word and the will of the Lord. The one who is richly provided

with that oil is already in the actual Kingdom of God and will never more have to go through a life's night in his soul.

[9] The light of his totally full life's lamp in his earthly life is a full living faith, which illuminates the things of the Kingdom of God more than enough for him. The one who perseveres in that light and who is not more concerned about the things of this world than is necessary for his physical life, will come early to the eternal life's light in himself, and in this manner also already on this side to the clearly present actual Kingdom of God and its power and might. For he who is one with the will of God the Lord, is also one with His eternal perfect wisdom, freedom, independence, might and power, and is therefore also forever a true child of God.

[10] Look, I am such *child of God*. But I did not become like that in the pure world of the spirits, but still during my earthly life. And actually in such a way that the power of the divine Spirit in me could perform everything it can do now.

[11] So as far as my body is concerned I did not die like all men are dying now, but the power of the divine Spirit in me suddenly dissolved my body so completely that not even something like the size of a sun's particle was left behind on this Earth. My whole body had become my eternal, indestructible garment, and that is why you can see me now with body, soul and spirit.

[12] If this is difficult for you to believe, then touch me. Then you will feel that I am a man with flesh and bones, this as long as I want it. But if I want to change everything into the purely spiritual, you will see me just like now, but not with the eyes of your flesh, but with the eyes of your soul, which I can open with you when and as long as I want. Just come close and touch me, for also this experience is part of it if I want to enlighten for you more precisely and more strongly the nature of the Kingdom of God."

43. THE DOCTOR FINDS NO EXPLANATION FOR THE NATURE OF RAPHAEL



IN this, **the doctor** came very close to Raphael and felt his hands. When he was finished with that, he said: “Yes, beautiful, and certainly also blessed friend, your exterior is unmistakably of a spiritual nature, because the indescribable softness and fairness of the skin of your body and the ethereal of your folded garment proclaim loudly that such thing was never experienced or seen by man. But your firm and strong arms that I felt now have nothing spiritual as such, and shows that, apart from your spiritual might and power, you also could compete with many wrestlers because of the natural strength of your muscles and your solidness. And nevertheless, you are completely a pure spirit. How can this be understood?”

[2] **Raphael said:** “Just be a little more patient, then you will more clearly realize and understand it. Now touch me once more, and convince yourself whether there is still something physical on me, and make then an opinion with the clearness of your mind and with the power of your reason.”

[3] **Then the doctor touched Raphael’s hands once more. However, when he took them with his fingers with manly power, he only felt air, because his fingers came unhindered to the palm of his own hand and felt nothing physical in between. And still, the doctor saw Raphael standing before him just like before, but of course, more with the eyes of his soul than with those of his body. After he experienced also that, he was embarrassed and did not know what he had to say about that.**

[4] **Only after having deeply thought about it, he said – not so much to Raphael, but more to himself (the doctor):** “This looks like existing and not existing. One time, a very firm body, and now, although still the same form, but nothing of a tangible being. How can the human mind understand that, and how can even the sharpest human intellect evaluate that? Here, my mind and reason are really standing still. O highest lovely and blessed friend, you

should explain that to me, otherwise it will be even more difficult for us Greeks to understand more clearly and better of what the Kingdom of God consists.

[5] You are here, for I can see you, and hear your clear voice, and still, according to the feeling of my hands you are not here at all. But even if I can see you now more with the eyes of my soul than with those of my body, I touched you the second time with my physical hands just like the first time when I could very well see your body. How can that be? Or did I perhaps only touch you with the hands of my soul, just like in a dream, which is to the physical maybe as unreal as the psychical or spiritual is to the physical? But if this is so, it is difficult for the human mind to discover something really existent in the material world of bodies as well as in that of the spirits, because the first one has as good as no value for the second one, and vice versa the same. And still, for the sense of sight and the hearing they are standing in front of each other as something existing.

[6] How can that be? Who can understand that? You are something that exists, but at the same time, for my sense of touch, you do not exist at all. And I must be the same from your viewpoint. And so we both are something visible and hearable as something existent, and nevertheless, what concerns the life's feeling, not *existent* at all. What is that? An existence without existence, and also a non-existence without non-existence. Friend, no man can understand that with his reason. And his mind becomes by that like an iron pillar, at which the wild storms of time will lick as long as it finally will go completely to ruin despite its hardness.

[7] Who and what are these storms? No human eye has actually seen their actual being, only the sense of touch feels their fleeting motion. But the pillar is mighty, and it stands there, visibly before all the sense organs of man. How can these futile storms in time cause its destruction? And why does the pillar, which is existent for all the life's sense organs of man, not destroy the storms? What is the mind of man that invented the pillars and put them down,

despite all the storms? Its works last longer *than the mind itself*, and this *mind*, which is their creator, is dead and can never more command the futile storms to spare its strong works.

[8] O my heavenly friend, with the experience that I have had with you now, it is not exactly easy for us human beings to understand the nature of the Kingdom of God, unless you yourself will explain this matter to us more in detail and more specifically. I could think about it until the end of all times – if that would be possible – and still remain on the same spot as I am standing now. Are you something or are you nothing, or am I nothing, despite my feeling that I exist now?”

44. EXISTENCE AND NON-EXISTENCE



RAPHAEL said: “I knew that you would have an experience on me by which your Greek philosophy, which is still greatly stuck in you, would be shipwrecked. That must be put out of your mind if you want to grasp the nature of the Kingdom of God already during your physical life.

[2] What is this foolish talk about existence and non-existence? There is only 1 existence. There is absolutely nowhere in the whole endless space of creation a non-existence. Although the temporarily, material existence is only a test-existence in order to attain to the true existence that can never more be destroyed, it is nevertheless also in itself a complete spiritual existence, for it is impossible that another real and true existence should exist in the whole extended sphere of infinity.

[3] Look friend, with all your Greek worldly wisdom, there is the Lord, sitting in our midst. He alone is the true and eternal true existence in Himself. We are only, by His will, His realized ideas and thoughts of light, from the smallest to the greatest.

[4] Since His ideas and thoughts of light are the fruit of His eternal endless love – which is His Being and Life – and which are just like Himself, imperishable and eternally indestructible, so is also our existence forever completely indestructible in the real

spiritual life.

[5] And since His endless wisdom and His love did not only create the visible, movable images for Himself out of His ideas and thoughts – if this can be said in a human manner – as it were for His perishable and in a certain way temporary pleasure, but have to exist eternally as independent free beings who are completely like Him – since they existed out of Him – His ideas and thoughts cannot be compared with the fantasy of men, but they are true realities, as He Himself is the only One, *and* forever only true reality.

[6] He gives to all His extremely endless many ideas and thoughts a certain material test-existence for the fortification of their independence. And for this, He most certainly has His best and most true reason in His endless wisdom. Because which true master, who wants to build a big work of art, will not first clearly deliberate with himself as to how it can be preserved, as it must be according to the very wise plan of the master.

[7] So it is completely impossible for even a little dot to be destroyed of what once existed. For once something exists in the endless abundance of thoughts and ideas of the Lord and eternal Master, it possesses its indestructible reality. That the forms, appearances and existent things and beings in the material world are subject to changes and apparent temporality is determined by the Lord, just like with a wise architect who has to build a big strong castle. Thereby you will also see at the beginning of the construction a lot and all kinds of raw construction stones, bricks, beams and still a lot of other things that are necessary for the construction, but all these things separately will first have to be submitted to great changes before they are suitable to be used for the construction of the big castle, which you very easily will be able to conclude and understand from the mentioned image. In exactly the same manner, all the things in nature, of which man is the cornerstone, are the preceding construction materials from which only then the actual existence and indestructibility of the spiritual world must and will continue.

[8] Or do you perhaps think that the Master, who created the visible sky, this Earth with all the things on it, and man out of Himself according to His eternal love and wisdom, will let exist the most insignificant moss plant, so that He, the eternal One, would have pleasure on such little creature for a few moments and then let it go to ruin and perish, and immediately after that, for His pleasure, He would begin a same game in another spot? O friend, how narrow-minded would such idea be.

[9] Look, if the Lord would be able to completely eradicate and destroy even one of His smallest created, divine thoughts and ideas, He obviously would loose something of His endless perfection, which in itself would be a pure impossibility. For, as far as His eternal Spirit is concerned, He is precisely the power that fills the endless space of creation everywhere with His omnipresent activity. Then where in Himself could He put a being that was once placed out of Him and in Him in an independent existence, realized by His will, so that it could be completely destroyed?

[10] If you have understood all this in the right manner, you will be able to correct your old existence and non-existence *philosophy* insofar that there can only be an existence but eternally never a non-existence. For if there would be a non-existence, it nevertheless must be and exist somewhere, and if it exists somewhere, then it obviously would not be a non-existence but something that finally would exist anyway, and then there should be no more question concerning all your worldly wisdom of a non-existence.

[11] Look, since you wanted to prove to me, out of your Greek philosophy, something that can never be proven, I made use of the same weapon and have thereby illuminated a real light for you. If you will let it become a real bright flame of life in yourself, you also will clearly understand what in fact the Kingdom of God is in itself. That means in its pure spiritual sphere, as well as in its corresponding relation and inner connection, on this Earth as well as on the other numberless celestial bodies of which you can see

a very few as stars at the so-called firmament. But you should remove your old Greek philosophy out of yourself completely. For in this obvious truth you certainly will find a more true comfort than in a teaching according to which a person at the end of his short earthly life has to expect his bliss in a complete non-existence.”

45. THE COUNTER-QUESTIONS OF THE DOCTOR



COMPLETELY amazed about the wisdom of Raphael, **the doctor said:** “Very eminent friend, you have now killed nearly all the old doubts in me, and I feel lighter, livelier and more courageous in my soul, for which I thank you from the deepest of my heart, and will also remain thankful for the rest of my whole life. But I still have to ask you one more question concerning what you have explained to me about the impossibility of a non-existence. If in your answer you can explain this to me in the same understandable manner, then all my old doubts concerning a non-existence, which is still imaginable for us shortsighted men, will be completely done away.

[2] My question is: where and what were all the beings who exist now, before they existed by God’s almighty will? Where and what was I before my procreation and birth? Was I already somewhere, and was I ever something? Why is there no memory left in my soul?

[3] Without this *memory*, my reason considers every to be expected existence in the future as well as a former existence, as a non-existence, this compared to my present existence of which I am clearly conscious. For if I am no more what I was, and if every memory of a no matter what former existence will be entirely taken away from me at a future existence, then every existence is for me the same as a complete non-existence.

[4] So my soul, living now in my body, could have for instance lived in a deer or in another animal – as some of our many anthropologists believe – which I cannot remember in the least.

But since I, in my present condition of existence, do not possess the least of memory of such former condition of existence, no matter which one, to me such possible former existence is a complete non-existence, or in short, to say it differently: the one who I am now, never existed before, and thus I did not exist.

[5] And if in a future existence I will again be something very different from what I am now, where also every memory will be taken away from me, then I will be no more the same as I am now, and thus again I will not exist. For what is the use of a chain if many thousands of links that belong together will never be put together as links that are supporting one another? As long as they are not put together, gripping into one another, no former link does exist for the link that comes after it. And when this is obviously the case, then the existence of the chain is also of no use, and so also the existence of every separate link in relation to the other link with which it has no connection.

[6] Look, very eminent friend, this question contains much of what is of extreme great importance for man, who is poor in his awareness of the full life and who continues to live on this Earth, who often thinks clearly and who is thereby tormented by the fear of the always painful and near death. And I absolutely did not ask you this question with the intention to put your great wisdom to a heavy test, but only with the intention to receive clearness myself by your wisdom that can see through everything. Very eminent friend, please speak now.”

46. THE NECESSITY TO VEIL THE MEMORY



APHAEL said: “Listen, my friend, if you really would have paid more inner attention to the example of the building of a big, strong castle, you hardly needed to ask me this question. What concern are those materials that existed before for the castle that is still not build? Let first the castle be completely constructed. Then the preceding materials will have a well recognizable connection for the whole castle.

[2] If you would be very clearly aware of what your soul had experienced before on many different levels on this Earth up to your present condition, you would by that become so much divided and torn apart in your thinking, evaluating and willing in yourself that it would be impossible for you to absorb in your soul the moral unity, power and strength from the Spirit of God's love, which is now in your inner being, which is your only true life and which brings it about. *That means to absorb it* in such a way that *your soul* would become one in and with that Spirit.

[3] Once the soul will become one with It, he will, while contemplating himself, receive that all-remembering clearness, out of which he will very clearly recognize, with a blissful feeling of gratefulness, the endless love and wisdom of that One, great Master Builder, and will forever admire Him. Then the possibility of looking back, which you desire now, will be beneficial for his eternal life, while now it would be terribly harmful for you.

[4] Even now when the Lord has determined to totally veil the remembrance of the former conditions of the soul, men are still too easily and frequently falling into animal-like lusts and passions that cling to the soul – no matter how hidden – and submit to their lusts, leave God and behave like animals. How much more would they become like that if the Lord would not most wisely *and* as much as possible veil these remembrances?

[5] The Israelites, who were the chosen people of God, began to grumble and to rage when in the desert they missed their full flesh pots of Egypt. The children of Abraham, who in Egypt had returned to an animal-like behavior, did not like the manna from God's Heavens, while by eating that bread, their body could have and should have been brought more on the level of the soul, and their soul more on the level of the spirit.

[6] If the Israelite people, who were freed by Moses from the hard slavery of Egypt, possessed moreover the full remembrance of the conditions of the existence and the development of their soul, I tell you: the raging gluttony of such people would have become worse than that of all devouring animals, and much worse than your pigs,

that, when they get hungry, do not spare their own little ones.

[7] Can a spiritual development and subsequent union with the divine Spirit ever be imagined with people who are in that kind of condition – this from the thinking, knowing and willing soul who is so much burdened and broken down?

[8] From what I have shown you now according to the full and obvious truth, you will understand that it would be very harmful for man if he would completely and clearly remember all the former conditions of his soul as long as he is still in the process on this Earth of becoming one with the divine Spirit according to the will of God that was revealed to him, and also out of the full freedom of his own will and understanding.

[9] So be one with the divine Spirit in yourself, according to the will of the Lord, whom you very well know and understand now. Be you yourself a perfect master builder of yourself according to the will of the Lord. Then you soon will be very clearly aware why the wise, skilful and artful Builder of a big, strong castle, has wisely ordered, in this and that way, His formerly disordered building materials, from the greatest to the smallest, and has then joined and connected them, so that they can become a big, beautiful and everlasting whole.

[10] But as long as you yourself are not thoroughly experienced and an expert in the mentioned building art, it is pointless for you to look at such great building with such critical look, for it finally will make you confused in every respect.”

47. THE WISDOM OF THE LORD



WHEN you will see for instance in a big building that is finished, a stone in a wall, and then also a protruding beam, then you will also reason like this: ‘Now why did the master builder actually let this brick to be put in this wall, and let that beam protrude above it? Could he not as well have used that stone efficiently in another wall and insert that beam in another part?’

[2] The master builder will tell you: ‘Friend, you reason about my architecture, in which I am very well knowledgeable and skilful, as a blind person about color. Look, that stone that irritates you so much must be exactly put in that spot for the whole *structure* and durability of the building. Just like your eyes are effective on that spot in your head, which is the most suitable *place* for them. And this is also the case with that protruding beam. First, be skilful in architecture, starting from the basics, then you will be capable to form a correct and true opinion about a building and about its separate elements, from the first to the last and from the smallest to the greatest.’

[3] What the architect, who is experienced in architecture, should tell you as an answer to your opinion about the building that he build, the same I am telling you as an answer to your opinion about the conditions of the soul that precede his final form.

[4] In order to explain very clearly your question to me, based on your Greek wisdom, you have used the image of a chain, of which the ring-shaped links are indeed separate and present as such, but since they were not connected with each other, the one link did actually not exist for the other, and could therefore not have a mutual relation with it. For if a link is not hanging well recognizably, visibly and tangibly to the next one, the whole unattached chain is completely useless, and does actually not exist at all.

[5] But I tell you: go and observe a very good chain smith, how he makes a chain. First, only separate links are made. Once they are present in the right quantity, they are connected with each other with links in between, according to the ancient rules of the art of forgery. And this in such a way that from this, after the first connection, groups of only 3 ring-shaped links will appear. Once that work is finished, 3 links and 3 links are connected with each other with a 7th link in between. After that, with the use of a new link in between, there are groups of 15 links, which are again connected with each other. And this will continue until the whole, long chain is ready.

[6] Once the long chain is ready, from the first to the last link, according to this ancient way of forgery, will you then still say and ask why the master smith, who is very experienced in his handwork, made at first only separate, unconnected, ring-shaped links for the making of a long chain? Or will you then not rather think by yourself: 'The master smith was completely right to work like that. For by that, he assured himself of the strength of each separate link. Once every link is strong in itself, then after the connection, the whole chain will also be strong and lasting.'

[7] Although the separate former conditions of a soul seem to be as if were unconnected for your understanding, nevertheless in the eyes of the great Master Smith, they already exist as connected. Because which master smith on the whole Earth would be so stupid to make continuously separate chain rings, only for his extremely boring pleasure, without ever having the idea and the will to connect them to become a whole, very useable chain?

[8] But if an earthly smith will not do that, whose understanding, comparing to the wisdom of God, is as good as nothing, then how can you expect something like that from the extremely loving and more than wise God? A smith, who would be stupid and foolish, would really not even be capable to make the worst ring of a chain, let alone a whole chain. But if a smith with the help of his reason, skill and strength can make separate rings, he also will be well capable to make a whole chain from that, because he only made the separate rings beforehand to obtain the whole, very useable chain.

[9] And all the more, God let only exist the separate former conditions of the soul of man beforehand, letting him become as if a separate existence, for the benefit of his final complete connection.

[10] However, if God would not be wise, He also would not be that powerful to bring something to life out of Himself, having a form, as if existing outside of Him. A supreme might and power is however not thinkable without a supreme, pure, most unselfish love – and coming from its eternal living fire, a supreme and

extremely living light of wisdom. And from that light, no man, with a somehow purified human reason, can ever expect that *the love and wisdom of God* will bring all kinds of weak and helpless beings to a life which is often extremely short, in order to have by that a short satisfaction – like children with their toys. For in that case, which is as such completely impossible, God would be in His love and wisdom as powerless as a human being, and He would not be able to bring any being to a real existence by the power of His will.

[11] From this you can conclude that firstly, one true and eternal, in Himself unchangeable God must exist, without whom no other being is imaginable. And secondly, that this one and only true God is the highest, purest Love, and thus also the highest Wisdom, of which all His endless many works are witnessing. And He must therefore also have the Power above everything. For without that, nothing could be created. And thirdly, since God is in Himself, as the eternal Order, unchangeable, then also for His creatures it can impossibly be different than to remain, just like Him, forever unchangeable – this after the planned period of their perfection where some apparent changes have to precede.

[12] Now, if this is still not enough for you, you can eternally search for more convincing proofs, but these you will never find. Did you really and truly well understand everything I have said to you now?"

48. THE DOCTOR AND THE DISCIPLES ARE GRATEFUL FOR THE TEACHING



HE doctor said: “O my very eminent, heavenly friend, now you have wiped away all my objections and doubts – and this entirely up to the last atom. Now everything is completely clear to me, and that will surely also be the case for all my companions. Therefore, all praise to the only Holy One among us, who from His immense love announced to us, through you, a citizen of the Heavens, the true wisdom from the Heavens, so

illuminating and so easy to understand for our still foolish mind. [2] Now the nature of the Kingdom of God is as if placed before my physical eyes and was clarified. O, how happy and cheerful my soul is now.”

[3] **Then the disciples said to the doctor:** “Friend, the actual nature of the Kingdom of God became not only completely clear to you, but also to us. For in this respect, also our mind was still more or less enveloped in a haze, even after hearing numberless very great things from the love and wisdom of the Lord, and also from you. Therefore, also all our love, all praise and all honor will go only to the Lord who gave again through you on this mountain such bright light to all of us. With this light from the Heavens, all that which is still dark on Earth, must be completely enlightened.”

[4] **Raphael said:** “Friends, it would be good if the enlightenment would be as easy as you imagine. Men became in general too materialistic and animal-like, and it is difficult to proclaim the gospel about God’s Kingdom to stones and wild, devouring animals.

[5] You only have one very worldly-minded person in your midst, who was with you since the beginning and who also heard and saw everything. For him, my open conversation with the doctor meant not the same thing as it meant for you. He thought within himself: ‘O, if I would have his wisdom and might, then all the golden mountains of the Earth would be my property.’

[6] Therefore, the light from the Heavens for the awakening of their spirit is only given to those who search for it and who love this greatest life’s possession above all and greatly appreciate it. But for those who only want to brag about it in order to only acquire an abundance of dead treasures of the Earth, such light is useless, and it pushes them even further into the old judgment of matter. Therefore, it is not good to throw the pearls from the Heavens to the pigs. Thus, give what is pure in the first place only to the pure.

[7] When you will change the animals into human beings, then give them pure food which is suitable for human beings. However,

there are only few *true* human beings, and those live in misery and are almost crushed down by the human beings of stone and are trampled down by animal-like human beings.

[8] When you will proclaim the gospel to the people, then proclaim it first to the poor and miserable. Only after that, try to make human beings from stones and animals. What I have told you now, belongs also to the wisdom from the Heavens.”

[9] **The Roman judge who also listened very attentively to all the wise words of Raphael and whom I also had secretly awakened, so that he could grasp the meaning of what was said, said to Me:** “O Lord and Master, how extremely wise is this beautiful heavenly spirit. Yes, if man would have understood how to clearly and understandably explain the inner, hidden things of the life of the soul, then there certainly would never have come up a dark idolatry among the people. For after having such teaching and wonderful experience, even the most simple person would begin to think and to work on himself from the light of his faith according to such teaching, and conform himself to it. And with Your help he easily and quickly would have come in this manner to that inner life’s completion, for which sake Your love, wisdom and power have created him.

[10] And as they say: ‘on a good example will follow a good following’, it then certainly would have attracted the attention of other people, and these would have asked to the completed man how he came to such divine completion of life.

[11] And if he then would have proclaimed the obvious truth with the clarity of this spirit, whom You, o Lord, have called ‘Raphael’, then, with all their life force, they certainly would also have turned to those deeds by which it was only possible for them to attain to the true completion of life, since they also are human beings.

[12] But as far as I know, there never appeared a divine teacher of life with such simple clearness before and among the people on this Earth as now with this wonderful spirit. And so it is also understandable that so many people have in time lost God, themselves and their true life’s destination out of their awareness

and perception.

[13] As judge I specialized myself in all divine and human teachings and laws that exist in the Roman kingdom, and thus obviously also in the Jewish *teaching*. But everywhere there are mysteries upon mysteries that were piled up, which a natural human being, even if he is gifted with a clear insight and a sharp mind, can impossibly understand and practically apply for the truly above all necessary development of his inner soul's life. And, o Lord and Master of all beings and things, after such teaching it should be clear to everyone what he is, what he must become and what he should do to become according to Your plan. O Lord and Master, in this respect, is my opinion somehow correct?"

49. THE GREATEST OBSTACLE FOR SPIRITUAL GROWTH



SAID: "Yes, My friend, for people like you, you would be right, but it will not work out as well here as you think.

[2] Did you not hear from the mouth of Raphael, when everyone thanked him so heartily for the great revelations he made regarding the nature of the Kingdom of God, how he admonished one of My first disciples who was, and still is, with Me since the time that I taught? That disciple saw and heard everything, and still, the world means more to him than all the truths that he heard.

[3] Can he complain that My teaching is hard to understand, whether it comes from My very own mouth or from the mouth of one of My angels? O, absolutely not. He understands everything, but when will his will, which still sets out for earthly gain, be prepared and ready for the pure spiritual action?

[4] And as this is the case with that disciple, what concerns his free will, so it is the case with many thousands of people. How many people did I teach Myself, in the open field, in the streets, in the cities, villages, houses, on the lake, on the mountains, in the temple and in the deserts, and did thereby always great, unheard-of signs to open the eyes of those blind ones. Just go and look how

few of them did really repent of all those who heard and saw Me.
[5] And look, as it is now, so it was and so it also will be in the future, because every person possesses his love, his will and his reason in freedom. Even if he understands the full truth with his reason, then he still sees, with his lustful eyes, also the world with its many enticements, and he does not want and cannot turn away his heart from that because his flesh prefers that instead of the spiritual things which his sensorial eye cannot see and his flesh cannot feel.

[6] Besides, laziness is very typical to man. He often has one good intention after another, but once he should completely act upon all this, then his lazy and lustful flesh resists against it, and draws also the soul downwards to what is most important for his laziness and lustfulness. Then to what advantage is it for the soul to have clarity in the things of the spirit when he does not want to deny himself and does not want to go in full earnest upon the ways on which he could attain the full unity with My Spirit in him?

[7] Now you think in your heart and say to yourself: ‘Lord, but why did You then cover the soul of men with this flesh if that is only unsuitable for his spiritual completion?’

[8] But I say to you that I only can certainly see best and the most clear how a soul has to be put in a right balance between the world of matter and that of the pure spirits for the sake of his short earthly test-life, because these are the conditions to acquire the full freedom of his love and his will.

[9] It has been determined in this way that for every soul, matter must have a certain overweight, so that the soul will by that be forced to become active against the small overweight of matter in order to make the right use of the freedom of his will. To achieve that, the teaching from the Heavens was given to him at all times and in all clearness, which places the soul in a completely free floating condition between spirit and matter.

[10] If the soul will then make a little effort to actively rise to the spiritual, the spiritual will then also immediately receive a great overweight, and the soul will rise with great ease above the weight

of the laziness of the matter of his flesh, and will penetrate to the life of the spirit in him.

[11] Once he will have achieved that with some difficulty, the heaviness of the matter of his flesh can no more hinder him on the progress to an as high as possible life's completion. And even if, on that easy road of progress, he still will now and then bump against a little stumbling stone, then it only will cost him very little effort to remove it."

50. HOW TO SAFE MATERIALISTIC SOULS



HOWEVER, if the soul, who received the pure teaching, who also understands the truth and thinks within himself: 'Aha, now I know what I rightly should do for my salvation. But before I will completely work on it, I still want to enjoy for a while the charms and sweet things of this world, for they are offered to me, because now that I precisely know the ways to spiritual completion, it really will not matter as to when I earnestly will walk on it. And when I will go that way, I surely will also make progress.' Look, friend, then the soul begins to taste of the charms and sweet things of the world, and also to fully enjoy it. By that, he will give a great overweight to the matter of his flesh that can hardly or not at all be completely conquered anymore with his clear understanding in the things of the spirit.

[2] Since such a soul acted in the beginning against his better judgment, he slowly sinks ever deeper into matter. And also the original pure spiritual enlightenment becomes ever more opaque. The soul comes into all kinds of doubts, and in his material laziness it is for him really not that worthy anymore to stand up and to – at least for the short time of a few days or weeks – make a serious attempt, by denying himself, to convince himself whether there is still something true of the teaching that was revealed from the Heavens in order to receive the inner, true life.

[3] Yes friend, once such a soul became lazy against his very own judgment, and sees people around him who have attained to the

inner life's completion because they did their best since the beginning, then this will still have no strong influence on him, and it will not bring about any activity in him. If he is in a good mood, he will let the wonders of the spiritual in man be told to him by the awakened fellowmen. And now and then, also the wish will be awakened in him to be like those completed men. But immediately after that, the enticements of this world, which he enjoyed and still wants to enjoy, act so mightily upon him that he cannot resist them, and he will think by that: 'Well yes, I do not do anything wrong if I do not fully repent immediately. First I still want to see and try out this and that in the world, and then I still will have largely the time to walk in the footsteps of the completed ones.'

[4] And look, in this manner will the descendants of those people, who have become lukewarm and lazy, think, decide, simulate and calculate even more in themselves. And they become completely dark and evil in their spirit if they only are being remembered what they should do as men to attain to the inner life's completion.

[5] And so will grow and become rampant the weeds of the night of the souls as a result of their ever awakened worldly lust for pleasure and increasing laziness of one generation of people after another. So much so that I have no choice than to let such people personally experience the futility and evilness of their worldly strivings by visiting them with all kinds of plagues and judgments.

[6] Only after all kinds of bitter experiences – when they will come to the point that they themselves will abhor the world and its futile enticements – it will again be the time, like now, to show them the ways to the light of life through new revelations from the Heavens, which will then be followed by many with great dedication. But still a lot more people, who sank down too deeply in the night of the judgment and the death of the world, will nevertheless remain where they are. And they will persecute all those who want to awake them to the life of the spirit, just as long as they will be wiped away from the Earth by the judgments that are allowed to come over them, like the storms that blow away the chaff.

[7] Yes friend, on My part, the proportion between spirit, soul and

body is perfectly and accurately weighed with each human being. It is only the illusionary wisdom of men, that old inherited sin¹, which has changed the good proportion into a bad proportion.

[8] Take for instance the old myth about your Prometheus and his self-created daughter Pandora. Who is that Pandora actually?

[9] Look, this is an image which stands for the illusionary wisdom and the nosiness and worldly lust for pleasure of men by which he is chained to the hard matter. Even if from time to time an eagle comes to him from the heavens, and strongly warns him that he should release himself from matter, then this is of little use. For as soon as the eagle went away for a while, the liver in the soul of man – which is the symbol of his worldly lusts – is again completely enlarged, and the eagle from the heavens must eat it again. Do you understand this image?

[10] Moreover, look to what Moses himself said in a clear image about the first human pair, and you will find therein exactly the same thing.

[11] And if this is so, then it is not because of Me that the people became worse, because I laid in the soul a little advantage for the world, but gave him on the other hand at the same time a complete light from the Heavens, with which he can overcome that small preference for the world with little effort. Do you understand these things, friend?"

[12] After this teaching of Mine, to which also the others had attentively listened, the Roman as well as all the others thanked Me, except the one who did not like My explanation.

¹ Normally called 'original sin'.

51. RAPHAEL'S TEACHING



AFTER the first teachings of Raphael and Mine, it was quiet, for they all thought about what they had seen and heard, and they put it into their memory and their whole mind as deeply as possible.

[2] And Raphael spoke again with Philopold and Kisjona about the first times and the changes of the Earth. Because Philopold was a good geologist, wrote down already many of his observations and formed an opinion about it, as well as our Kisjona. Therefore, the 2 were very much interested in what Raphael could very clearly and easily reveal about it.

[3] My disciples, who very clearly heard these things already several times, took hardly notice of it and rather discussed with each other about what Raphael had said about the nature of the Kingdom of God, and about the reason for the ever greater deterioration of the people on this Earth, which they heard from Me. But all the others, who never heard anything in detail and in depth about what Raphael was explaining to Philopold and Kisjona, listened with great attention to Raphael and were surprised about My power and wisdom, because I had arranged all this in the manner of the highest order.

[4] Especially the doctor from Melita (the present Malta) was interested in it, for he mainly acquired his knowledge in Athens, also in Alexandria in Egypt and in Syracuse in Sicily, and in his youth he was greatly involved in exploring the Earth and its powers. For that purpose he traveled at that time to Egypt up to the waterfalls and also through the whole land of Greece, the regions at the Pontus and along the Caspian Sea, as well as through a great part of Arabia and the shores of Asia at the Mediterranean Sea. And that is why he gladly wanted to start a conversation with Raphael about this, but since Raphael was only casually talking about everything, our doctor could not bring out a word, and so he just preferred to quietly listen to the explanations of Raphael and took only some personal notes.

[5] When Raphael talked about the volcanoes, our doctor could no more retain himself and asked Raphael to allow him to ask him a few things.

[6] But **Raphael** said: “Friend, you only have to listen to what I briefly will say about it. Then you will receive a good understandable explanation for the experiences that you had and which you did not understand until now.

[7] For I know your Etna and Vesuvius since their beginning, just as I also know your thoughts and questions, precisely and long before you thought about them yourself. For the spirit and the life of the Lord, which is my everything, is also all-knowing and all-powerful in me.”

[8] When the doctor heard that from Raphael, he was completely satisfied with that and continued to listen most attentively to the explanation of the angel.

[9] The explanation lasted for more than 2 full hours, and those who listened to it with the right attention learned in that short time more of the nature and the characteristics of the Earth than even the most zealous disciple could ever have learned at a high school in Athens or Alexandria or also in Syracuse in 100 years.

[10] When Raphael had finished his speeches, by which he also explained to the disciples the relation between the Earth and the moon to the sun, the thereby occurring phenomena, as well as the other planets and the fixed stars, **the Roman** said to Me: “O Lord and Master, now again I begin to see the light. Our extremely incorrect and totally wrong ideas about our Earth, the moon, the sun, the planets, comets, fixed stars, and all the other phenomena in the sky, must have thrown the people into the deepest, most blind and senseless superstition. Who could ever have delivered them out of it if You Yourself did not come down to us from the Heavens with Your servants to show us the true, wonderful facts of these great things of Yours? Did the first men then not know anything of all that? And if they knew something about it, then one can wonder how they could fall back from such lightening truth into the most dark and foolish superstition.”

52. ACCEPTING THE TEACHING OF THE LORD



N exactly the same manner as I have just shown you.

[2] The first men knew everything according to the full truth, but once the soul of man becomes dark in one or the other thing as a result of his laziness, stupidity and the lust of his senses, he also will become dark in all the other things.

[3] Moses himself wrote a personal book for the Israelites who became dark in Egypt. In the same manner as My Raphael instructed you now. That was considered to be important until the time of the first kings. However, when their descendants let them be captured by all sensuality, then also all the pure science went to ruin among them. And instead of that, came what you can see now among the Jews in an often still darker degree than with the gentiles.

[4] Everything has now been accurately, very detailed and very clearly shown to you, and also to the first disciples before on several occasions. And besides them, also to a lot of other people. But just count 200 years from now on, then what concerns the pure science you will again see the old superstition.

[5] But also this knowledge will be kept secret among those who will stay with My teaching. And then there will be a time wherein this science, and at the same time 1,000 other sciences, will completely destroy all the old superstition forever. But first there still will be a long-lasting and hard battle. However, the truth will finally be victorious, and all what is dark, false and evil will be condemned forever in the abyss.

[6] You soon will have the opportunity to meet your geologists, physicists and astronomers, and then you will also try to show them the truth which you came to know here, but by that you will hit hard stones. Although a few will think about it, but they nevertheless will remain with their old system. Others, without any reflection, will call it foolishness. For to also correctly and truly understand the things of the natural world without doubting, one has to be first spiritually awakened, know the one, only true God

and also himself, after which man will be clearly and actively become conscious of who he is and why he exists.

[7] Once man will see clear into these most important aspects of his existence and life, and when thus My Spirit will develop in his soul with living and enlightening activity, and penetrate into the whole man, he will also quickly and easily grasp, with his enlightened reason from above, the nature and the order of the things of the big and small natural world in its full and undisputable truth, and he will understand them completely. But if you will proclaim to the gentiles what you heard from Raphael – even if they attended all the high schools of wisdom with great zeal – they will not understand it, will call it foolishness and will ridicule it. And the dark, extremely selfish and imperious priests will hastily and furiously curse it and set the people against this new teaching that does absolutely not fit into their old plans of idols and deceit.

[8] Therefore, the important thing is to first proclaim the gospel of the true Kingdom of God on Earth among the people, and once they have accepted that, and were strengthened by the Spirit of God, they easily will grasp all the other truths. For My Spirit, that I will pour out abundantly over everyone who really believes in Me and who loves Me, will guide them into all wisdom and truth.

[9] Do you think that you would have understood the things, which Raphael explained, also without the living faith that you have now in Me? I say to you: you would have understood them as little as the stones of this mountain.

[10] When the basis of all human knowledge is lie and deceit, how will other truths be able to bloom from such basis?

[11] If you do not know the unit while you are counting, which is the fundamental condition for all the figures that come from the sum of units, then how will you yourself ever come to know the truth of the figures?

53. FALSE AND TRUE PROPHETS



OW the Roman looked very surprised and said: “O Lord and Master, You Yourself are truly the only eternal Truth and Wisdom. Only now I see that in instructing the people, a certain order must always follow, so that the teaching will actually be useful for the life of man.”

[2] I said: “Certainly, for to teach someone wrongly, means to build the house on sand. How will it last when storms and heavy rains will come over such house?”

[3] Only the one, who teaches his fellowman in the right order, as I have shown you, will build a house on a rocky surface. When storms and floods will come over such house, they will not be able to damage the house, because it was built on a rocky surface. And that Rock am I. And when you begin with Me, you will be able to do everything very well. However, without Me nothing. Remember this well, My friend.

[4] If someone seriously wants to teach his fellowman about Me, he should not seek advice within himself for too long as to how he should deal with it in the most fruitful way. For I Myself will lay the right words in his heart and in his mouth.

[5] And now that you also know that, you will not make a wrong step when you will instruct your fellowmen in My name. But he who will not completely heed this, will quickly and easily come on wrong paths, on which he and his disciple will hardly be able to find their way.

[6] That was always the evil beginning of the false and deceitful prophets and the darkening of the people and their deterioration. That is why, only he should teach his fellowmen who first was taught by Me in his heart. However, he who will teach his fellowmen out of himself and only of what he heard piece by piece from other people, as if he was taught by Me, and who will also call out: ‘Look, here’, ‘there’ or ‘over there is Christ, the Anointed Truth from God since eternity’, you should not believe, for that is a false prophet who only wants to act as a prophet for the sake of *his*

reputation and temporarily gain.

[7] And he who wants to distinguish with little effort a false prophet from a true prophet and teacher who was called by Me, should look at his works.

[8] What man can hide least of all from the eyes of his fellowmen are his selfishness and pursuit of profit. To satisfy that, he all too soon and visibly will leave nothing untried to reach the goal for which his heart has an indestructible love.

[9] Therefore, let the false prophets never receive might or outer reputation. For once they have reached that, it soon will look extremely dark again among the people, and you will have a hard battle to fight against them.”

[10] **With a worrying face the Roman** said: “O Lord and Master of all existence and life, we men will probably hardly be able to prevent that. If You Yourself, almighty One, will not prevent it, this Earth will soon abound with false prophets, because the blind people will hardly or not at all be able to distinguish between a true and a false prophet. Who will then say to them and will be able to make clear to them that their teachers are false prophets?”

[11] **I** said: “Friend, I will do My part, but you should also do your part. Every person has completely his free will, which I may not grab with My almightiness and restrain it, because that – as I have shown you very clearly and understandably – would be against My order.

[12] And that is why I give into your hand the best means against all falsehood by the truth that I have shown you. And with that, you can build, with My help, the strongest dams and walls against the whole deceitful brood of Hell.

[13] But of course, those false prophesiers cannot be exterminated from this Earth as fast and easy as you imagine now. Nevertheless, it finally will be solely and only the illuminated, living truth that will be victorious. So remain firm and unbendable in the truth, for it is only the truth that will make – not only you, but finally all people – free from the old, heavy yoke of lie and deceit. So let yourself never again be seduced by any apparent ever so clear,

shining lie. Then everything will go well.

[14] Now you are the salt, the best spice among the people on this Earth. If you will not become lazy and lukewarm, it will go well with the spiritual food, and the people will eagerly desire for it. But if you, who are the salt, will become spoiled and bad of taste, then with what will the spiritual food for the people be seasoned?

[15] Therefore, in everything, act according to My teaching and according to My will that you well know now. Then in time, your salt will exterminate the weeds more and more among the wheat on the field of life. And by that, you yourself will be extremely joyful about the power and might of My truth among the people.”

54. THE HEALING OF THE SICK MEN FROM JOPPE



AFTER I had said these things, a servant of Marcus came to invite us for the midday meal, for meanwhile it was already well after noon.

[2] But I said: “He who wants to go down now to strengthen himself with earthly food and drink can go now and satisfy his body. However, I Myself will stay here on this mountain until this evening. He who wants to stay with Me, will also not be hungry nor thirsty.

[3] Soon a great number of hungry and thirsty poor people from near Joppe will come here who will eat the meal that was prepared for us. Some are crippled, *some* with lame hands and feet, lepers, and people who are plagued by malicious fevers. If they will eat the food that was prepared for us, it will go better with them. The servant of the house should organize it that way.”

[4] **One of the present disciples of John** said: “Lord and Master, the people who came here from Joppe do not know anything yet about You, and can therefore have no faith yet in You and Your Word, and nevertheless they will be healed by Your blessing that You will lay in the food. How can this agree with what You always say: ‘Your faith has helped you’?

[5] I said: “How can it agree with you, an elder disciple, to ask

such a foolish question? Did I not already send out a great number of disciples?

[6] 2 of them are now in Joppe and proclaim My Word to the poor. They also have laid on their hands on these poor in My name, and their health improved, but those who were healed fell back into their old weaknesses and sins of habit, and thus also into their old physical afflictions.

[7] They went again to the 2 disciples with the question if they could heal them again, but the disciples said: ‘Even if we would heal you again in the name of the Lord, you nevertheless will sin again. That is why we say to you: first do real penance, and if the Lord sees that you seriously and definitely have improved your life, then He Himself will help you. Stand up and walk in full repentance, faith and trust to the miraculous spring at the Lake of Galilee that was put there and blessed by the Lord Himself, then you will find healing there. Let the trip on foot, which is a heavy task for you, be your penance.’

[8] Look, after this serious admonition, the sick poor people, began their faraway and hard trip – no matter how difficult – in full faith and trust, and the ship that steers to shore now, brings them here.

[9] Thus they do not arrive here without faith, but with a right measure of faith, and so they will be helped by their faith.

[10] But in the future do not ask Me such foolish question anymore, for such question could show that you are not a suitable salt to season the food for the soul and spirit of men.”

[11] Then the disciple asked Me to forgive him and thanked Me for the admonition.

[12] I turned to the servant who received in the meantime the instruction from Marcus to bring a sufficient quantity of bread and wine on the mountain, and said: “The poor should receive their food outside, for the open air is more beneficial for their health than the air and fumes of the dining hall. Go now and do what has been instructed to you.”

[13] Then the servant went away and took well care of everything.

[14] Soon other servants brought several carafes full of wine and

also several loaves of bread.

[15] **The servant** who was sent down told the poor guests, who had come to land, that they should take place in the open air as well as possible, and he immediately let the food, that was excellently prepared for us, abundantly be set on their tables.

[16] **The poor** were really surprised about that and said: “O friend, we surely are needy for this kind of food, but we are poor and can hardly pay for it.”

[17] **The servant** said: “The One who prescribed this food for your healing, has already paid for it. So eat and drink without further worry. But when you will become healthy, then do not fall back again into your old weaknesses and sins, as you did only a short time ago in Joppe after you were healed for the first time by the 2 disciples.”

[18] **When the poor** heard that, they were surprised about the words of the servant, and one of them asked him how he could know that, since those 2 disciples who told them were staying in the port city for – as far as he knew – already a long time, and they certainly did not visit this region. And so they could not have revealed this to him, and that except from the 2 disciples of the great Savior, and they themselves, no one could know about it.

[19] **The servant** said: “Do not ask any further, but eat and drink, so that you may become healthy again. Once you will be healthy again, we surely will be able to talk about how I came to know these things.”

[20] **Then the poor** started to eat and to drink, and when they were really satisfied, their afflictions left them. The lepers became clean, those who suffered from fever lost their fever, and the limbs of the maimed and crippled ones became straight, and they could use their feet and hands as good as only a strong and completely healthy person could use them. There was almost no end at the astonishment, the questions and also the praises. But the servant gave them no answer that was of importance.

55. THE AMAZEMENT OF THE GREEKS ABOUT THE HEALTHY MEAL



NE of those who was healed, a **Greek**, born on the island of Cyprus, but who established himself later as fisherman in Joppe and who was further a very experienced man, said to the servant: “Friend, the land where I was born and where I lived and worked as an experienced fisherman for almost 30 years, is called Cyprus, and despite its great vastness it is surrounded on all sides by the great Sea. It is extremely fruitful and in every respect so sound and healthy that it became a proverb to say: ‘In our country there is no sickness and here you do not die’. For this reason, rich Romans, Greeks, Egyptians and also Jews are buying property there for much gold, build beautiful houses and live then very happily in that lovely country.

[2] I often witnessed that sick people went there and ate the healthiest food, and drank the best and purest wine, but they did not become as healthy as we now in this also lovely place.

[3] What actually was in that food and in that delicious tasting wine that we drank, so that we all, almost 40 people with different afflictions, became in one time and suddenly as healthy as if there was never anything wrong with us?”

[4] **The servant said:** “Neither the food nor the wine healed your afflictions, but the mercy and will of the One on whose account the 2 disciples sent you here, and in whom you completely began to believe when His 2 disciples told you that the fullness of the Spirit of the one, only true God lives in Him.

[5] With His love, compassion, mercy and will, that food and wine were seasoned, and those spiritual spices made you healthy. So thank only Him for that. And now that you are completely healed again, do not fall back again into your old weaknesses and sins, so that you would not be afflicted once more with even worse afflictions than these of which you were now miraculously healed.”

[6] When those who were healed heard these good words of

warning of the servant, they promised by everything that was holy to them that they would remember them until their death. But they gladly wanted to know where they had to travel now to meet the great Savior in order to give to Himself on their knees the gratitude that was only due to Him.

[7] **The servant said:** “I did not receive instruction to tell you that. But feel real love for Him, then it also may happen that you will see Him.

[8] He only will let Him be found by men – and also allow them to speak to Him – who search for Him in their heart that was purified from sins, even if they would be at the end of the world. For He sees everything, He knows everything, and He knows even the most secret thoughts of every man, even if he would hide in the most distant corner of this vast Earth.

[9] So do what I have told you. I also can say this to you because I know Him personally, and, although I am only a servant of this house and my boss, I myself am filled with the spirit from the eternal truth of His teaching.”

[10] **Then the servant left the healed ones and went away to do his other work.**

56. THE HEALED ONES AND THEIR SKIPPERS



WHEN the 2 left their tables, walked to the lake and related all their experiences to the skippers who were still present.

[2] Also the skippers from near Tiberias were surprised and said that they also heard a lot about the great Savior of Nazareth, but had never seen Him, and that is why they also could not directly accept what they heard from other people about the great Savior. But since they saw now an unmistakable proof before their eyes, they could and also wanted to believe all the rest of what they heard about Him, as well as to praise God above everything who had given such power to a human being, for this never happened since time immemorial.

[3] **Then a healed person said:** “According to your perception and

knowledge you really are completely right about that, but we looked at it somewhat differently in ourselves, and I do not think that we are mistaken. That Man – according to your opinion – to whom God has given such great power, for which you want to praise Him as your God, seems to be the Lord Himself in His house. And with His power he can entirely decide as He wants. And the God, whom you want to glorify and praise for the sake of this Man, seems to fully live in Him. For based on what we have heard from the 2 disciples who were sent to Joppe, He absolutely does not speak to the people in the manner of the former different prophets. For these always said: ‘Listen, people’, or ‘Listen, king’, or ‘you’, or ‘you’, ‘this is what the Lord says’, and only after that, the Spirit of the Lord spoke from the mouth of the prophet. But He says: ‘I Myself say to you, and I want it.’

[4] Well now, friends, when someone talks in this manner, and God does not visibly punish him before everyone for this presumption which is very sinful to everyone, then such person must have the fullness of God Himself within him and must thus also be entirely the Lord Himself, for otherwise he truly would never succeed to command all the spirits, creatures and elements. And everything obeys the infinite power of His will, for this is what we know from the mouth of His disciples who witnessed a lot of signs and miraculous deeds.

[5] So we have the impression that in that great Savior of Nazareth we directly are dealing with God Himself and no more with a prophet, no matter how great he may be.”

[6] **A skipper, who was very well acquainted with the Scripture, said on this:** “You are from Joppe, a city where are now living more gentiles than real, true Jews. And therefore, you yourselves are more like gentiles than Jews. What difference does it make for the gentiles if they add again another new complete or half god to their all together at least 10,000 gods?

[7] But with us, real and still true Jews, there is written already in the 1st commandment of Moses: ‘I alone am your God and Lord, you will therefore only believe in Me as the one, only true

God, and you will have, nor worship, strange gods beside Me that were invented by men.’

[8] Look, this is the law for us Jews, forever and always. Now if this is so, then how could we accept that miraculous Savior as a 2nd and thus new God, and give Him honor which we only owe to the one, only true God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob?

[9] Despite all this, we feel great joy on that miraculous Savior of Nazareth, because God gave Him – a human being like us, and most certainly because of His great piety – a great power as has never happened before. And therefore we only praise the one, only true God, but not that man who is abundantly gifted with divine power.

[10] If you were true Jews, you would do the same. But since you are more like gentiles than Jews, you can do what you want, for you do not have to give account of your faith to the Pharisees in the temple at Jerusalem.”

57. THE HEALED SKIPPER PROVES THE DIVINITY OF THE LORD



THEN the healed skipper, who came from Cyprus, said:

“It is true that I am a gentile from birth, but I know Moses and the prophets as well as you do.

[2] Is it not stated with the prophet Isaiah: ‘A voice of the preacher calls out in the desert. Prepare the way for the Lord, make even a road on the fields for our God’? And further it is stated: ‘The Lord will pasture His flock as a Shepherd. He will gather the lambs in His arms and carry them to His chest, and lead the ewes.’

[3] We live indeed in Joppe, but we well heard from the mouth of the 2 disciples about all the things that happened near Jerusalem.

[4] The voice of the preacher in the desert was John the Baptist, who made even a road on the fields of your blindness, but by the envy of the temple servants whom Herod succeeded to have on his side, he came into prison, and soon after that he was beheaded.

[5] That preacher in the desert recognized the Lord in that Savior

of Nazareth, and his testimony opened up the eyes of many. Then why did the Pharisees stay blind and hard of heart, since they also have Moses and the prophets?

[6] When the prophet says: ‘The Lord will pasture His flock (namely us men) like a Shepherd’ – and this happens now undoubtedly before our eyes – then is this Shepherd, whose personal arrival on this Earth was faithfully and clearly announced by all the prophets, starting with Moses, and exactly for this time, not one and the same Lord and God who gave the commandments to Moses on the Sinai?

[7] If we gather now in faith as lambs around Him, and He leads us with all the love of His divine heart, like a good shepherd does with the ewes – which can be all too distinctly and clearly seen by His teaching and His deeds – are we then, even if we are more like gentiles than Jews, believing in another, strange God, except only in the One in whom we should believe according to the commandment of Moses? And are we doing wrong if we thank Him for the mercy that He gave us, and give only the honor to Him?

[8] Truly it is not very honorable to you if we as former gentiles recognize in full truth sooner the light that came to you than you who are, according to your Scripture, a chosen people for that light.”

[9] On these words of the fisherman, the skippers did not say anything anymore, for they saw that the fisherman was more skilled in the Scripture than they were, and they did not want to start a dispute with him. But at the same time they thought among themselves and said that the skipper could finally be right, and thereby some of them became more believing than they were before. Soon after that, they loosened their ships and sailed back to Tiberius with the promise that they would fetch the 40 healed inhabitants of Joppe in a couple of days, if they wanted.

[10] But these **(the healed ones)** said: “We thank you now for your good will, but we will take another way home.”

[11] Then the skippers finally sailed off.

58. THE DOCTOR ASKS FOR THE MANNA IN THE DESERT



OUR residents of Joppe looked at the shore of the lake and were constantly talking about Me. They also looked at the bath house and were very surprised about the many big rooms that were very efficiently equipped, as well as their cleanness. They also looked at the very big garden and praised the owner of the bath resort, the master builder and the gardener who must have constructed it. They asked some servants of the bath resort how long this beautiful institution existed, who the master builder was and from where he was.

[2] But the servants were not allowed to tell anyone, and they answered the questioners that they would know from the owner of the bath resort if that would be necessary for their salvation.

[3] When the 40 men had visited everything in the garden until almost the evening, being really amazed about it, they went outside again and consulted with each other about where they would spend the night. And when they saw several tents on the mountain, and a big terrace with a roof, which made them think of the temple, they asked a servant, who was close by, if they could spend the night in the tents on the mountain since they were poor people without any means.

[4] **But the servant said:** “When the time will come to rest for the night you will be allowed, just like any other guest. However, be patient for the moment until the lords who spend almost the whole day pleasantly on the mountain will return home.”

[5] The healed ones were also satisfied with that and went to their table where there was still some bread and wine left. They strengthened themselves with that and talked again with each other, especially about Me.

[6] And what happened in the mean time with and among us on the mountain while the poor were down *the mountain* and were treated, taken care of and healed according to My will?

[7] Our Raphael told everything that happened down *the mountain* to those who were present. And the cleverness of the servant was

praised, as well as later *the cleverness* of the fisherman of Joppe because of his reaction to the skippers of Tiberias. The disciples of John came to realize better and clearer that the inhabitants of Joppe were not healed by Me of their afflictions without having faith in Me.

[8] When Raphael had finished his story, and the sun was already coming really close to the horizon, **the doctor of Melita** went once more to Raphael and said: “Eminent friend, since my spirit became more and more awakened and clear by the words of the Lord from your mouth, all the things that I have ever done, seen and read in books comes so lively back into my memory, that I would like to read you word by word all the books of Moses, the prophets and still many other things from the books of the Jews. And with this, I stumble on something very strange, at the time that the Israelites stayed in the desert and had to nourish themselves with the manna that daily and abundantly fell down from the sky to the Earth, except on the Sabbath.

[9] I do not doubt in the least now that the manna-rain was a real miracle. And so, what I find so strange is not the unmistakable miracle, but the fact that according to the precept no one was allowed to gather in 1 day more than precisely what he needed for 1 day for himself and his family. Only on Friday everyone was allowed to gather the prescribed provision of manna for himself for the Sabbath, on which day no manna fell from the sky. However, if on another day someone gathered a provision for the next day, it became spoiled, full of worms and it stank, and could thus not be eaten by men or animals.

[10] Now, in this strange rule of Jehovah, given by Moses and Aaron, I cannot discover the actual wisdom of the Lord and its reason. Did it really happen this way, or is it only a symbolic, hieroglyphic kind of representation of a secret, deep-spiritual truth that will only be revealed in man when his spirit will completely rule in his soul?

[11] If it was really like this, I actually do not understand why no one could gather a provision, except only on Friday before the

Sabbath and not for another day. And when the manna did not get spoiled on the Sabbath, with worms and stinking, why did it happen with a provision that was gathered for another day as it is described? Eminent friend, would you also like to ignite a good light in my soul concerning this?”

59. RAPHAEL’S TEACHING ABOUT THE FEEDING OF ISRAEL IN THE DESERT



APHAEL said: “Yes, my friend, it really happened that way, and this for a very wise reason, for if God wanted to educate the people for a higher light, when in Egypt they sank down completely into the most dirty worldly things, He had no choice but to keep them – after the people had received the laws of life – for 40 full years in the bare and unfruitful desert in all possible soberness, to bring them in this way to a higher light. That people submitted to, on the one hand wrangling¹, and on the other hand excessive saving because of all kinds of privation, and because of that, came greediness and terrible stinginess, in such a way that it was very difficult to completely exterminate such vices and sins with the people. Cheating, stealing, robbing and murder, lying and all kinds of prostitution and committing adultery, especially with the pagan Egyptians, became a second nature with the people of God despite all warnings and chastisements.

[2] Under the known pharaoh, who oppressed too violently and cruelly this otherwise zealous people, and persecuted them everywhere, they listened again to God’s warnings, and they gave up for a great part their many vices and sins. And God awakened Moses as savior of that people in the manner as you know from the books.

[3] Now the people came into the severe desert, with no fields, no gardens, no pastures, no milk, no bread and no flesh pots, about which the people became very sad, and they complained and

¹ To wrangle = to obtain something by trade through persistent arguing or maneuvering.

grumbled because the provisions which they took along were soon empty, and the fishes of the Red Sea were not sufficient to feed the people.

[4] Then God had mercy on the people and gave them the daily bread from the Heavens. When the people received it very abundantly from the Heavens, the old, bad spirit of exaggerated saving and wrangling became all too soon active again. But God gave them precepts with sanctions, directly through Moses to the people as to how the gift of the food from the Heavens had to be gathered and used. And the one who would not observe that precept was then immediately and precisely chastised according to the precept.

[5] And look, this soon suffocated that evil spirit of worldly attitude with the whole people, for with the gathering of a provision of manna there never seemed to be any profit, and so the people observed the precept.

[6] That the manna, which was gathered on Friday for the Sabbath, stayed fresh and good also on the Sabbath, was the will of the Lord, so that the people would still observe 1 day in the week with the purpose to refrain on that day from any useless work and would be concerned with God and His teaching and will. Because the people in Egypt had completely forgotten the day of the rest in the Spirit of God, because they constantly gathered, worked and bought and sold every day. And a people without any spiritual teaching will all too soon pine away and become wild to a level that is lower than that of the animal kingdom, and they would then hardly be capable to raise themselves up to a higher light by the might and will of their own reason.

[7] If you consider all that together in a right, merely human, intelligent manner, you surely will already very clearly recognize the bright shining love and wisdom of the Lord.

[8] Of course this occurrence has also a deep spiritual and heavenly meaning for the people of Israel.

[9] The bread that the Lord let rain from the Heavens for the people in the natural desert – which also corresponds to the inner,

spiritual desert of the people of Israel – to feed them physically, corresponds with the Lord Himself who came down now as the living bread from the Heavens in the true spiritual desert of men. His word, His teaching and His deeds of love are the true, living bread from the highest Heavens. The one who actively will eat of this bread will never die again for what his soul is concerned, but will have the eternal life within him.

[10] A lot of those who ate the old manna have died, not only what concerns their body, but regrettably also what concerns their soul. And up to this hour they have still not risen to life. However, those who actively in the spirit eat of this living manna have already risen within themselves to eternal life. Look, this is the spiritual meaning of the former manna.

[11] The natural manna of which the Israelites were not allowed to take provision corresponds also with the fact that the people should not gather any treasures that can be destroyed by rust and moths, but only the treasures of the Sabbath for the soul and spirit that remains eternally. Do you understand this now?"

[12] **The doctor acknowledged very thankfully, and they were all surprised about this speech, for also My disciples did not understand this before.**

60. THE PHENOMENON OF THE MIRAGE



SINCE the sun was already sinking under the horizon, our Marcus thought that it was somehow time to go down home, because during the autumn the evenings were often cooler.

[2] **But I** said: "Friend, it is at least ½ hour too early for that. Do not worry to know whether an evening meal is being prepared for us or not, for when we will be back in the house, everything will be ready.

[3] **But here** on the mountain will happen something, about which you will be very surprised and which will have a very good influence on your heart and soul. That is why it is important that

we stay here for at least ½ hour.

[4] When the sun will have set completely, you will glorify and praise Me because I revealed this to you. But from now on until that time you should be completely quiet.”

[5] Then everything became peaceful and quiet. Also the spirits in the air, in the earth and in the waters were silently commanded by Me to be quiet. And so, in the whole visible nature it became so utterly quiet that not even the smallest sigh of wind was moving, no little bird was flying around, and the water of the lake became so completely calm that the high mountains that surrounded the lake could be seen on the water surface as distinctly and clearly as in the natural way, which greatly delighted all those who were present, for they practically had never seen such perfect rest of the lake before.

[6] Some of them wanted to ask Me for the meaning of this perfect rest in the nature that was never experienced before. But since I had instructed all those who were present without exception to be completely quiet, nobody dared to open his mouth. Also in the house down *the mountain* and also in the big bath resort it was completely quiet, although nobody knew what made him to be completely at rest, being without any activity. Also our Raphael, who stood close to Me, was as quiet as a statue.

[7] When it became dark and the stars became gradually visible, a great number of known and even more unknown regions made their appearance in the very pure and completely quiet air, especially in the western sky. As far as the eye could see, the shores of the Mediterranean Sea could be seen with all the places and ships, and they all noticed that the big Mediterranean Sea was totally calm. Completely at the western brim, where the sun was setting, also the known image of the strongly red colored sun appeared, about which all those present were very much surprised in their heart. These appearances became livelier from minute to minute.

[8] When those present had sufficiently seen these phenomena, I said to the disciples: “Give now your opinion about this

phenomenon which very often happens at certain times, especially in Egypt and in the desolate Arabia. Often in broad daylight, and which brings people to all kinds of superstition.”

[9] On this invitation of Mine, **the disciples** said: “Lord, such phenomena are not completely strange to us, but what they actually and completely are according to the truth, and how and why they exist, no mortal being has grasped yet, neither a lot of other things.

[10] Apparently You made them appear here to also give us the right instruction about these things, so that we would not have any wrong ideas about such events. But how they otherwise exist in a similar manner, only You and Raphael will know.

[11] The Jews considered them as prophetic signs for future events and for an important sign scripture of Jehovah with deep meaning, as we have seen some time ago during the night on the Mount of Olives.

[12] We have not heard much about what the gentiles think about it, for we never involved ourselves in the doctrine of their gods. But since we have now several totally converted gentiles with us, they can now also come up with their view and their belief regarding such phenomena.”

[13] **Now the 2 Greeks, who, in the morning, were the first to seek the only, true God, and who were healed, came standing before Me and said:** “Lord and Master. The fable of the great witch Morgana is too silly to represent here, for we already laughed about it before ourselves when we were kids. And so, that one seems now even more silly and ridiculous.

[14] However, on our faraway trips we often had the opportunity to not only see such phenomena – although not always to this extent – but also to discuss about it with very capable nature researchers and scientists, and there was one among them who apparently, in our opinion, hit the nail pretty much on the head.

[15] His opinion was that such phenomena, as well as many thousands of other phenomena, have a completely natural cause and must be considered and seen as signs for future events of other subsequent phenomena, which is especially important for the

skippers on the sea and the caravans through the big sandy deserts. As they always appear during the greatest rest of the air that lies on the Earth, it seems as if the completely quiet air, high in the region of the clouds, receives a reflecting power just like on the completely quiet water surface. And so, according to him, we often can see regions, places, mountains and rivers from a great distance, as well as a lot of other things, which we do not know, that are reflected by the high, quiet air surface. But when the air become restless – which inevitably seems to happen after such phenomena – and the winds are blowing, then such phenomena would also very quickly disappear, because by the ever stronger air current it would entirely lose its rest, and with that its reflecting power.

[16] Now whether the viewpoint of our physicist is completely true and correct, we cannot entirely and truthfully know. But that it seems to be the most probable and understandable for the exploring, clearer human mind, we are fully convinced, since after such phenomena the consequences are always following with certainty.

[17] During this kind of phenomena we often noticed at the same time that the reflecting images on the supposed air surface were seen reversed, and this confirms the viewpoint of our physicist even more, for on a completely and very quiet water surface the reflecting images are also always seen reversed – then why not also on an air surface?

[18] This is now our opinion about such phenomena. If one of the disciples has a better *view*, he can speak out to us.”

61. THE REASONS FOR THE SPIRITUAL SUPERIORITY OF THE GENTILES



ONE of the Jewish Greeks from Jerusalem, who was formerly a scribe, said: “Although your point of view about this case seems to be very convincing for the worldly intellect, but it nevertheless seems somewhat too natural to me since it lacks every spiritual background.

[2] Because we did not only see regions, places, mountains and the big Sea with its many ships, but also the sun with a few clouds floating around. Was that also a mere reflection on the air surface that you very well described?”

[3] **One of the two Greeks said:** “When the spirit, whose name is Raphael, just gave us a precise explanation about the Earth, the moon and the sun, as well as the relations of these celestial bodies between each other, you seemed not to have well paid attention. Maybe you also discovered too little spiritual background with his explanations.

[4] If the cause for the setting of the sun, the moon and all the stars is only that our Earth – which is a great ball – turns around its axis in about 24 hours and a bit more from the west to the east, then the sun must apparently always be below the visible horizon. But since the air surface is surely very high above the mountains in the western horizon, then at such height it certainly will be able to reflect the sun – which is visible 1 hour longer – like a mirror image on its surface, just like all the other things that are below. Do you understand that?”

[5] **The Jewish Greeks looked surprised at each other, and the scribe said:** “It is almost irritating that the gentiles dominate us, not only physically, but also spiritually. For in all circumstances they are greatly surpassing us with their intellect, with their knowledge and sciences and their many experiences. And we cannot give them any response which they could not refute.

[6] Although, neither the Lord nor Raphael gave an explanation about this phenomenon, but as far as I can see this matter now, the

Greek will certainly be right.”

[7] Now I said: “Your opinion is now also correct if you think that the Greek is right, for according to what he said about a clear thinking scientist, his opinion about this phenomenon was very right. And we will receive proof of this in what will follow in a couple of hours as he indicated.

[8] Do you as a scribe still not know what is written in the Scripture: “At that time, the might and the light will be taken away from the Jews and be given to the gentiles’?”

[9] And look, based on this, the gentiles are ruling now over you and are even sky-high superior to you in intellect and all skills, knowledge and all kinds of sciences. And if you will not completely follow My teaching and live and act accordingly, they will entirely even more and beyond all measures be superior to you and trample down the whole, big Promised Land to dust. The beautiful, big valley of the Jordan with its many cities, places and villages will become a desert, where, apart from thieves and robbers, wild animals will live.

[10] I came into this world, as a Jew Myself, to you Jews to save you from every need. But just count the Jews who believe in Me. How little and small is their number compared to those who hate and persecute Me everywhere. And just count then the gentiles who continuously come here from far and wide and accept My teaching with great joy. They quickly and easily recognize Me as the One I am, and they immediately love Me above all.

[11] Then it is of course obvious how and when the might and the light is taken away from the Jews and given to the gentiles.

[12] Even if in the future the light among the gentiles will be greatly troubled and darkened. They will indeed very pompously call themselves to be My anointed and will let themselves be highly honored, but will in fact be much worse gentiles than now the Romans, the Greeks and other gentiles from the whole of Europe.

[13] But even among these gentiles there will always be many who will stay in My teaching and will not let themselves be blinded and

seduced by the world and its fleeting temptations.

[14] But just count now how many Jews there are who did not let themselves be seduced and enticed by the mammon of this world. In all the cities of Galilee, Judea, Palestine, Canaan and Samaria and still other parts of the country, you will not find 100 who have followed and kept the truth of old in their heart and in their actions according to Moses and the prophets. Only in this time, a greater number has turned again to the old truth by My teaching, especially from the class of the poor.

[15] If I compare this with the great number of converted gentiles from all parts and regions of the Earth, then this is now already a 1,000 times more than the Jews in whose midst I came into this world and walk around now as a most true and clear light, and call to them aloud everywhere that they all should come to Me.

[16] If this is happening now before your eyes and ears, how can you secretly be surprised in your mind if I truthfully say that the might and the light of the Jews will be taken away and be given to the gentiles, and that finally even among the extremely darkened Christian-gentiles there nevertheless will always be many who will stay with the original truth and will not let themselves be fooled so easily by the world?"

62. HOW THE JEWS ACCEPT THE REVELATIONS



ES, yes, in time there will come greater darkness, distress and need over the people, as men have never experienced before. But in that very deep darkness, many will seek the true light, and also find it, and these are the ones with whom I will be and administer justice to all the people on Earth.

[2] And as our Enoch-Raphael is now a witness of what happens now, so also at that time you will be a witness of what will happen as I predict to you now.

[3] But do not say in your heart that it is not proper to take away the might and the light from that ancient chosen people of God and give it to the gentiles.

[4] I say to you: no one takes it away from the Jews and gives it to the gentiles, but the Jews themselves are pushing away from them the light that came to them, and at the same time also the might. And if the gentiles take with great zeal what the Jews have thrown away and rejected, then am I the one who take away the light and the might from the Jews to give it to the gentiles, or are the blind Jews doing it themselves?

[5] I say to you: it is true that the Jews have still the Scripture, and from that they give to the people blind lectures, full of selfishness and adulterous impurity. In the Scripture are stated the old truths, still veiled indeed, but they are not understood according to the spirit of truth by the preacher who has no inner light, and still less by the people. And so one blind man leads the other, and when they come to a pit they both fall in it and the one cannot help the other.

[6] Then what is the use of having Moses and all the prophets for the Jews? The original truths that are in it are for them not even worth as much as the phenomenon of just now, which could hardly be of any value to you since it was only a fleeting image of deeper lying realities and which was for the greatest part distorted by the reflection by the air.

[7] The present Jewish priests are now and then perceiving such rather comparable reflecting image of the deeper lying truths of the Scripture, but because their heart and mind is all too soon and too easily disrupted by the winds of all worldly worries, also the mirror that must take up the spiritual things and truths from the sphere of the inner, spiritual life of their heart and mind is disrupted and disturbed. Thus they cannot perceive and recognize the hidden truths in the Scripture, and they immediately throw themselves into the arms of every worldly delight.

[8] They absolutely do not think anymore about the moments of light they had, and they go on guzzling during their whole earthly life. And when they are warned that they are on the way of ruin, then they are full of vexation and anger, and they persecute the One who has come to them in full lowliness, love, meekness,

patience, humility and in full goodness and compassion.

[9] And if this is so – and you repeatedly were able to convince yourselves of that – am I then the One who take away the might and light of the Jews to give it to the gentiles, or are they themselves doing it?

[10] The one who seeks, will find, to the one who comes and asks, will be given – even if he was a threefold gentile – and when a gentile comes to Me, knocking at the door, it will be opened for him.

[11] And so it will happen, that the old children of the light of life from God will be thrown out into the outer worldly darkness by their own way of life, where they will howl like wolves and pigs, and will rattle their teeth, but the children of the world, namely the gentiles, will be accepted in My eternal Kingdom of life.

[12] Just like when a mother hen attracts her little chicks and tries to hide them under her wings and protect them against the enemies, so I always attracted the children of Abraham with My Fatherly voice and wanted to gather them under My wings of light, truth and eternal life. And look, when I spoke through the mouth of the prophets, they said: ‘By the manner of speaking we surely recognize that this is the word and the voice of Jehovah, but why does He not come to us Himself, as He formerly went to Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, in order to speak with us, His children?’

[13] Then there were promises and once more promises, that I Myself would come in this time with all My might and power, and My whole eternal Kingdom of life with Me.

[14] The predicted time has come, and so have I with this time, precisely according to the prediction. Then why do they not accept Me? Why do they not recognize Me? Why do they not believe Me while I perform signs before their eyes that no one can do except Me, to back up My eternal truth of all the predictions of My personal coming into this world?

[15] In return of all My love, goodness, meekness, humility, patience and compassion, they hate Me and persecute Me with great haste and anger.

[16] Are these now the praised children of light? O, absolutely not. These are now the children of Hell. And not God but the devil is their father.

[17] Under such circumstances is it unjust of Me if I consider the gentiles as My children and refer the children of the devil to that place where the kingdom of their present father and lord is?

[18] Tell Me now, scribe, if I act unjustly to let go the all too wicked Jews according to their own free will, and give the might and light to the gentiles.”

[19] On this, **the scribe** said: “Lord and Master, who can justify himself before You? What You say is eternally true, and what You do is eternally good.

[20] Also the gentiles are descendants from Noah, just like the Jews. If they return now to You, this is their salvation and happiness, and You do not turn them away. And who would then say that it would not be just if You accept them instead of the children of the light who do not want to recognize and accept You as the One whom you are fully according to the truth?

[21] O Lord and Master, forgive Me the stupidity of my formerly expressed words. With Your mercy we also will once come into the clear with all the things of Your Kingdom.”

[22] **I** said: “This will also happen with you, but you yourselves should also be surprised that the gentiles, who are children of the world, are now cleverer than you in a lot of things and matters. But now we will not further talk about it.

[23] The phenomenon has now completely disappeared, and it became already quite dark. So we will go down again to the house and partake of a meal that has been prepared for us. The men from Joppe are already eagerly waiting for us, and they also should be informed of My presence. When they will know that, they certainly will be more joyous than the Jews in Jerusalem when I will go back to them. So let us prepare to go down to the house.”

63. THE FISHERMEN FROM JOPPE ARE INVITED BY THE LORD FOR THE MEAL



OW also a servant of Marcus came – the same one who brought the invitation to us for the midday meal. I praised him for his good and clever treatment of the poor and sick inhabitants from Joppe. He thanked Me for these praising words, and we went on our way down.

[2] We soon reached the house and went directly to the guestroom, for from the west came a rather hard wind blowing, which was also for the people from Joppe too severe, for they were standing outside at the shore of the lake and made acquaintance with the skippers of our Kisjona. They talked a lot to them about Me, and received also instructions from them that I was still staying here and that they most probably would come to see Me.

[3] When they saw that the so-called lords had come down from the mountain and were in the house, the known fisherman from Cyprus went directly to the house and asked a servant if they also could come into the house, for the wind outside at the lake was more and more severe, cooler and unpleasant.

[4] **The servant said:** “Just go inside and speak with the Lord Himself. He will give you the right answer.”

[5] **The fisherman said:** “Friend, through this open door I can see many sitting at the big dining table. Who of them is it?”

[6] **The servant said:** “Just go inside and you yourself can ask for the Lord. Then out of those many people you will immediately know who the Lord is.”

[7] **Then the fisherman came a little shy to us in the dining room, bowed deeply before us and said then with a determined voice:** “Exalted friends and lords of this village, I gladly would like to exchange a couple of words with the supreme commander of this village about a certain matter. Would you be so kind to show me, poor inhabitant from Joppe, to whom of you I have to address myself?”

[8] **Then our Marcus said very friendly:** “Yes, my friend, although

I am the temporal owner and guardian of this village, but the actual and only true Lord and Master over everything is the Man who is sitting here at my right side. Everything that you want to accomplish here depends on Him.”

[9] After Marcus’ words, the fisherman went with deep respect to Me, made again a deep bow and wanted to speak with Me in very elegant wordings.

[10] But I said to him: “I already know what you want to tell and present to Me. Look, there in the other corner of this large dining room is another big table, and it is already provided with wine, bread and other food. Go outside, bring all your companions here inside and sit at the table and strengthen yourselves with food and drink. After that, it will be clear what further things will have to be done tonight. Go now and do what I have advised you.”

[11] Then the fisherman, filled with gratitude in his heart, bowed deeply again and hurried to his companions who were already eagerly waiting for his return.

[12] When he told them what I had said to him, there was great jubilation among them. They left the shore immediately and went with full gratitude to the room, made deep bowings before us when they came in, went immediately to the table that was set for them and began to eat and drink their fill after the singing of psalms. And they soon became cheerful and joyful.

[13] Also at our table, everyone became livelier. And all kinds of stories did not lack about My deeds and teaching, to which the people from Joppe were listening more and more attentively, and so they were talking less among each other.

[14] From the words of My disciples, the men from Joppe soon noticed that I could be one of them.

[15] **The fisherman** turned to a servant and said: “Friend, be so kind to tell us who among those who sit there at the table of the lords is the great holy Master of Nazareth, who must certainly be present here, and about whom in Joppe 2 of His disciples, who were sent out by Him, announced to us that the fullness of the Spirit of God lives bodily in Him, and that therefore everything

obeys His will. They said that the one who believes in Him and lives and acts according to His teaching will receive from Him the eternal life and will be taken up into the Kingdom of Heaven.”

[16] **The servant said:** “Why do you ask me? Look, we all have received an order from our lord of the house not to make known the holy One of Nazareth to any guest, and we have to follow this order. But just go and speak with the One who on your request allowed you to come in. He will tell you the truth.”

[17] **The fisherman and several of his companions said:** “O friend, we thank you for these words that you spend on us. Now everything is clear to us. The One to whom we have to address ourselves to hear the truth, is the holy One of Nazareth Himself. Now we understand why your old lord of the house indicated Him as the actual and true Lord over everything. Therefore, all the honor goes to Him, all praise, all our love and worship.”

[18] **The servant said:** “Then stay with what your spirit has inspired you.”

[19] **Then the servant continued with his duties, but the fisherman said to his companions:** “Friends and brothers, since we know now that He is the holy One of Nazareth, whom the manager of this institution has indicated to me as the actual, true Lord over everything, and who told us to come in and invited us to this table, at which we have satiated and refreshed ourselves, He is also the only One to whom we owe now already for the second time the complete healing of our afflictions.

[20] Since we have the invaluable happiness that He is here to meet Him personally, and that we also recognize Him now, it is now the highest time that we also bring verbally our thanks to Him, as we very intensely can feel in our heart, and ask Him then that He would not leave us, and grant us His almighty love and mercy unto the end of our life, for from now on, all our salvation depends only on Him.”

[21] **They all fully agreed with the suggestion of the fisherman. They stood up from their chairs and wanted to stand before Me to verbally express their gratitude to Me, and then to ask Me what the**

fisherman suggested to them.

[22] But I was ahead of them, stood up from My chair, went to them and said: “Be at peace now, My children and friends, the gratitude and the question in your hearts are sufficient to Me, and by your faith in Me and by your love for Me, and thereby also for your fellowman, your request will also be completely granted forever. Now go back to sit on your places and let your heart be full of joy.

[23] Before midnight, a few things will still happen to give you a deeper teaching. And you truthfully should remember and keep it very attentively for yourselves and for many of your blind brothers, for also you can from now on become spreaders of My name and My teaching.”

[24] After that, I returned to My place, and the men from Joppe thanked Me again from the bottom of their heart, and could not stop to glorify and praise Me for the fact that I Myself came to their table and had greatly comforted them.

[25] Marcus instructed the servants to bring more bread and wine to the table of the men from Joppe, as was done immediately, and these took from time to time some bread and wine and listened continuously with the greatest attention to everything that was discussed at our table.

[26] After a while, from the discussions of the disciples, they also recognized Mary who sat at our table to be the mother of My body, and they praised her among each other as the most happy of all mothers on the whole Earth.

[27] Then **Mary** went to the men from Joppe and said to them: “Dear friends, praise only the Lord, and act according to His will. Although I am the mother of His body, according to His eternal decree, but He alone is the Lord from eternity, and so to Him only is due all honor, all glory and all praise in eternity. As far as I am concerned, I am only His handmaid, and I always let His will rule over me. So be quiet and praise only and solely the Lord.”

[28] After these words of Mary, the men from Joppe were quiet again, but they still discussed among each other that this mother

must have been extremely pious since her birth, because she had been made worthy of such unspeakable great mercy.

64. THE STORM AND ITS CORRESPONDING MEANING



AFTER they extensively discussed this subject, a roaring wind was heard from the outside that became more and more intense, and 2 of Kisjona's skippers came to us and asked what they had to do when such storm occurred. For the lake drove unheard-of gigantic waves against the shore, and in the storm, which came now suddenly blowing from the east, would become more severe, there was even a danger for the water to be pushed into the house. Their ships were 3 times more strongly tied up to the shore than before, and they also came to Me in faith, asking Me for help, but nevertheless, the storm became increasingly stronger.

[2] Now Kisjona asked Me to command the storm, about which I was the only and sole Lord and commander, to blow less heavily, so that the many inhabitants of the shore would not suffer too great damage.

[3] I said: "I am truly also the Lord of the storm, and it would not blow now so heavily if I would not want it that way. But why I want it that way, will be completely clear to you in an hour."

[4] So let the storm do its task and duty. It will not damage your ships. And your skippers should not be afraid of it, even when it will become stronger. The water of the lake will not flow more than now over the shore. But let the skippers be brought some bread and wine. Then they will look at the storm with a somewhat more courageous face than now."

[5] This was also done immediately, and the 2 skippers received several carafes of wine and also several breads, and they brought it to their companions who were in the skipper's cabin that was build on the shore. With this refreshment before them, they also were not that worried about the storm anymore.

[6] All those present asked among themselves what this storm

could mean and what it would bring about.

[7] Our Philopold addressed himself even to Raphael who was sitting very quietly at the table.

[8] But he said (**Raphael**): “Friend, if it would be the will of the Lord, I would tell you. But it is still not His will yet, and so I still cannot fulfill your wish. But in a couple of hours, this matter will become clear of itself before your eyes.

[9] For you know what the Greek added to his completely correct explanation of the mirage on the mountain, that after such rare phenomena – at which always a great calmness in the air is necessary – there are always and quickly heavy storms that follow, in the air, as well as in the water. And look, in natural respect he was completely right because he experienced this already several times.

[10] However, why basically the Lord allows these phenomena to exist and to come up, that is of course a very different question to which I cannot give you the answer yet for the reason that I already mentioned.

[11] Just look at the mind of man, which often sinks down into a complete worriless rest, by which man feels very happy and comfortable. But when man feels for a short time more and more calm, worriless, happy and comfortable, the stormier it will later become in his mind, when it was at first a little disturbed in its sweet rest by something uncomfortable.

[12] But a person’s mind that must constantly fight against all kinds of storms will not worry so easily for the storms that repeatedly come up, and he will more easily keep his calmness and the necessary rest at all events.

[13] If today during the whole day, from morning till late evening, it would have been somewhat less quiet in the whole nature, and *later on* it would not have been so exceptionally quiet, then the skippers of Kisjona would also not have had such fear for the high waves. These woke them up now from their complete rest of the whole day, and then they did not know what to do. But now, their mind stormed together with it, and that is why they now have

almost no more fear for the high waves.

[14] And look, friend, this is also a good lesson for all those who gladly would like to give in to that sweet, worryless laziness. The one who is always busy has largely enough with a short rest to strengthen his whole being. And once he is strengthened, he immediately longs to go to work again and he finds only therein his pleasure.

[15] However, the one who avoids to be active and who only feels happy and comfortable in an ever increasing inactive laziness – like the fattened Pharisees and other rich loafers – will fall into a complete fury if the laziness, which is so comfortable to him, will be threatened in the least.

[16] That is why the Lord took care of all kinds of beings, things and phenomena on this Earth, that will repeatedly shake up people from their work-shy rest. And so they will have to recognize that they are not the lords of the world and of all beings and things which are on it and in it – as the lazy rich persons greatly imagine – but that it is a certain Someone Else. Someone whom these kinds of people do certainly not know and about whom they do not want to hear anything truthful, as you can very well see among the many Pharisees and other Jews.

[17] Look, what I have said now to you is worth of more and greater attention than to hear already beforehand about the meaning of this storm.”

65. THE PRESENCE OF THE ANGELS WITH MEN



SO the men from Joppe listened with the greatest attention to this very valid and instructive speech of Raphael, and they were surprised of the wisdom of the apparent young man.

[2] **Some of them asked:** “Who can this nice looking young man be?”

[3] **The fisherman said:** “How can you still ask? Did the 2 disciples in Joppe not tell us exactly that there was also a young

man with the Lord, who is visible before all men and works great signs and wonders at the will of the Lord and who also gives men very wise lessons?

[4] This young man must be an angel who serves the Lord, so that the Scripture would also be fulfilled on that point, where it is stated: ‘At that time you will see how the angels of God will descend from the Heavens to Earth and will serve the Lord and men.’ Look, my dear friends and companions, this is what the 2 disciples truthfully told us, and we can see now entirely the proof of what the 2 disciples said to us.

[5] It is true that this young man has still not performed a sign before our eyes, but this we also do not need, because the very wise lesson, which he gave to the somehow too curious disciples and friends at the table of the Lord, is for us sufficient to conclude that this young man – from whose mouth comes so much truth and wisdom – is not a normal human being but must be a very high spirit. Is it now clear to you what kind of young man that is?

[6] **They all said:** “Yes, friend, you are completely right. So it is and not otherwise, and we thank you for refreshing our memory. The 2 disciples told us so many things that we really did not remember that young man anymore. But now everything is again clear to us.”

[7] **Then Raphael stood up and walked to the table of the men from Joppe, which made them feel somewhat embarrassed.**

[8] **But he quickly reassured them by saying to them in a friendly voice (Raphael):** “You really should not be afraid of me, for at the Lord’s will I came to you after your conversation about me. For wherever real friends of the Lord are discussing about what is of the spirit of eternal love and truth, there also the angels of the Lord are always gathered in large groups around them.

[9] I truly am not the only one who is near you, but there are still many more like me. Open up your eyes a bit wider, then you will see it for yourselves under the merciful permission of the Lord.”

[10] **Then for a few moments the inner sight of the men from**

Joppe was opened and they saw as it were in a sea of light, numberless large groups of perfect spirits. And from those large groups of God's angels sounded as if from one mouth a mighty voice: 'Happy are those who have recognized the Lord, who love Him above all and faithfully act and live according to His word, for already in His flesh He is equal to us, and we are always prepared to serve Him in all brotherly love.'

[11] **Then the inner sight was taken away from the very astonished men from Joppe, for they were not able to bear it any longer in their flesh because of too great happiness.**

[12] **When they could not see the angels anymore, the fisherman said:** "O friend, was this reality or only some kind of dream, brought about by your indescribable beauty. For I have never seen such charming, beautiful human form as yours, which looks like those whom I have seen now for a few moments in the light of the Heavens."

[13] **Raphael said:** "Friends of the Lord, that was not a dream, but the naked truth, you can be sure of that. Once you will be more completed in the spirit yourselves by your faith and especially by the pure love for the Lord, you will be able to see what you have seen now – constantly, on a higher level of light and life, very often and for a longer time. But for now, be satisfied with what you have seen and heard."

[14] **Then the fisherman said:** "O beautiful friend from the Heavens of God. It is true that man lives since his birth in the midst of sheer wonders, and he himself is still the greatest wonder. But since he is constantly surrounded by numberless wonders, he is used to it, he takes little notice of it, and even less thinks about it as to what and why they are, and who the One is who partly is always bringing them to life again. And other *wonders are brought to life* for a longer time, and again others – so it seems – to keep them alive forever, like the Earth and its lands, mountains, rivers, lakes and seas, the moon, the sun and all the numberless stars.

[15] But when new signs and wonders are happening before the eyes of men, as this is now the case with at the same time

the presence of the Lord, then of course also the already long existing works of wonder of the Lord receive back their true value. Then the awakened men are noticing it and they glorify and praise the eternal great Creator of those numberless works of wonder. We ourselves are now looking at the nature with very different eyes than ever before.

[16] Tonight we have seen again the air phenomena which are known to us and which we call by the name ‘fata morgana’. Of course, we do not understand how and why they exist. But we know by experience that storms will follow. And until now we considered them to be warnings from Heaven – that one should bring himself into safety at such phenomenon. However, these phenomena will certainly have another, deeper meaning. If it is necessary for us, the Lord will give us also a light concerning this, and if it is not necessary, we will not be greedy for it, for from now on, only the will of the Lord should rule over us. We thank you for your visit.”

[17] **Then Raphael said:** “My dear friends and brothers in the Lord – the Creator and Father of us all from eternity – I still have to discuss a few things with you, since the point is now to do completely away with the old, extremely blind and stupid superstition.

[18] You still do not know the Earth, and even less the moon, the sun and all the other stars. That is why I came to you to give you a correct and true light about this, and still about a lot of other things, for if someone has wrong ideas about the things and phenomena in the natural world, he never can impossibly completely grasp and understand the deeper, spiritual things. And since you are now also called to transmit the word and the light of life to other people, I will instruct you in the secrets of the visible natural world.”

[19] **The men from Joppe were extremely glad with Raphael’s offer, and as he did on other occasions, he presented everything illustratively for the sake of an easier and faster understanding, and there was no end to their amazement. And he explained them**

everything with a few words in a very understandable manner. Within 1 hour, the men from Joppe understood everything, and they praised My wisdom.

66. THE FALL OF HEROD'S AGENTS



AFTER this instruction, Raphael came back to us, and now he explained about the storm that was still going on.

[2] Many Herodians were staying in Tiberias who were commanded to trace Me and My disciples as soon as they would hear where I was staying, which they heard from the returned skippers who brought the men from Joppe to Marcus around noon. Therefore, towards the evening they manned several ships and put them to sea in the direction of Marcus in order to catch Me. The Lake of Galilee had however very steep and rocky shores from the more gentile than Jewish city Tiberias to the village of Marcus, and between the 2 aforementioned places, which were nevertheless rather far away from each other, there were at most 3 places where the fishermen can land their ships with difficulty.

[3] That the rather big ships, which were put to sea towards the evening from Tiberias with the Herodians in order to catch Me, were bad off with the storm, can be easily imagined by everyone, for directly when they left Tiberias, a very strong northwestern wind drove the ships with irresistible force to the eastern shore, where they forcibly bumped against the shore and were already considerably damaged.

[4] The skippers were now busy to repair a few broken oars and made them somehow still useable, but announced at the same time to the Herodians that this night, if the wind would not turn or completely lie down, they no more would leave this shore, for no matter what.

[5] If they would like to risk their life, they had to step into the 3 best ships, take the oars in hand themselves and try to go to the bath resort on the other side, which was located at more than 3 hours on sea when the wind was favorable. But the Herodians

also did not show any desire to do that.

[6] **When the northwestern wind was soon turning to the east, the Herodians said:** “Well now, faint-hearted skippers, the wind has favorably turned. Do you now also not dare to go out to sea to reach the other side?”

[7] **The skippers said:** “During the day time, when you can see the dangers, you easily can go out at sea and go to the bath resort at the other side, but at night it is a risky thing, despite the favorable turning of the wind, and then you really can have great damage. Besides, an eastern wind that comes up in the evening cannot be trusted, for it might turn into a hurricane. And when this will brake out, then woe the one who is at sea.”

[8] **The skippers firmly tied up 2 ships to the shore for themselves and said to the Herodians:** “The other and better ships over there are at your disposal. Just go out at sea now to where you dare and want to go. We will not take an oar into our hands tonight. The ships that we hand over to you here, are the property of the city. If they will go down with you, Herod can indemnify them to the citizens. But these 2 ships are our property, and we will not expose them to any further danger – and ourselves even less.

[9] Besides, we have heard from all sides that all those who tried to trace the Nazarene were bad off. And who knows if He – of whom is said that He is in connection with all secret might and powers – does not already precisely know of your intention and has already completely prevented our trip to the bath resort, where He possibly could be staying according to the people that we brought to the bath resort today, which may be so or not. We already told you in Tiberias, for which you laughed at us. And now we are standing here and cannot move forward.”

[10] **Then the chief of the Herodians said:** “Just leave those 2 cowards here. It is a moonlight night and the wind is favorable. With this kind of wind power we are on the other side in 1 hour, and in the cure resort we will soon come to know where the Nazarene is with His followers.”

[11] **Then they stepped into the 5 ships, which were the property of**

the city, and they forcefully pulled at the oar rings. When they were out of the swampy water in the free, open sea, the eastern wind, which was already blowing heavy before, changed immediately into a very heavy hurricane, which soon stirred up the water to very high waves.

[12] Then **the skippers on the save shore** said: “O, it would be a great miracle if only 1 out of those 5 ships would reach the other side. Those fools will receive their deserved reward if they will all perish. Maybe the ship with the chief will reach the other side and crash there, for it is strongly timbered and well shielded. But the 4 open ships will helplessly sink.”

[13] And so it also happened. The 4 open ships with 130 soldiers of Herod were already swallowed up by the lake in a ¼ of an hour. Only the ship of the chief reached after 2 hours the other side where we were. And this only because I wanted it so.

67. THE RESCUE OF THE CHIEF



HEN the ship came close to our shore, like jumping up and down on the waves, I said to those present: “If one of you wants to go to the shore now, he will see the reason for this storm, which will then immediately lie down. 4 ships with 130 soldiers were swallowed up by the lake. Only the one shielded ship, which carries the chief with his subordinates and 10 soldiers, will come here, and they truly will not be able to do anything to us.”

[2] When I had said that, several of My disciples stood up. Especially John’s disciples who were with Me and who were very interested to know the reason for the storm. They went immediately to the shore and saw the ship that was already quite close and wagging to the shore.

[3] It did not take long before the ship was thrown quite violently on the shore by a high wave, and those who were in it cried out for help.

[4] Then **Kisjona’s ship workers** came out of their cabin with a

torch, and fastened the ship with ropes to a strong mooring, and then they said to those who were in the ship: “Stepping out of the ship on the dry land you can do yourself, if you want.”

[5] **Then the chief asked:** “Well, the terrible storm confused us all completely. Do tell us where we are now and if we can find here an inn for the night. For despite its tight and good shielding the ship caught some water in the inner deck, and we cannot spend the night in it until it has completely dried during the day.”

[6] **A chief skipper of Kisjona said:** “For what is concerned the first, you are in the cure resort of the old Roman Marcus. For what is concerned the inn for the night, he himself is the lord of that. We are not at home here ourselves and do not know the rules of that house.”

[7] **On this, the chief said:** “But are there no house servants present here?”

[8] **One of Marcus’ servants who was already present said:** “You first have to show where you come from, who you are and what the purpose of your trip to this place is. Or will you continue your trip tomorrow to another place? If you do not want or cannot give any clearness about this, then for the whole night you can stay in your ship, no matter how wet it is inside. And our Roman night guards will take care that none of you will come out of the ship.”

[9] **The chief said:** “Now listen, you rather brutal servant of your lord. I am a chief of Herod and have several subordinates and 10 soldiers with me. We actually come from Jerusalem, but the latest *we come* from the city of Tiberias, and the purpose of our trip lies in the fact that we must obey the will of our king.”

[10] **The servant said:** “I surely know that the proud and greedy Herod has also rented this part of the country from Rome, but this place with all that belongs to it is an exception. This is a guesthouse to exist for all times on its own according to Roman decree, and Herod has nothing to search and still less to do or to command here, except if he, as a sick person, and against payment he wants to make use of this bath resort for the healing of his body, which is available to him as well as to anyone else. For the rest, we

do not listen at all to him, and he is even not permitted to step on the ground. If he wants to do that with force, we will know how to respond with force. So your obedience to the will of your lord and commander is of no concern to us here, but if you perhaps want to travel on through our place to another place, where your commander rules, then I will call our guards to receive you here and guide you on the territory of our lord.”

[11] **The chief said:** “No my friend, in this case this is not necessary, for we actually came here for the bath resort, and we would have arrived here already several hours ago if we did not have to go through such terrible adversity with that heavy storm. So just take us in. We will not give you any trouble.”

[12] **The servant said:** “Do you carry any battle weapons? If so, you first must give them in consignment until you travel on, for only Romans may carry weapons here.”

[13] **The chief said:** “Of course we carry weapons, for we are of the class of warriors, but if there is such law in this place we will not resist it. So you can take our weapons in consignment, but then you should take care that we can receive accommodation for the night.”

[14] **Then the servant called immediately a considerable number of well-armed night guards, and when they arrived, he said to the chief:** “Now you can go on land.”

[15] **Then the Herodians went immediately on land, gave their weapons and were brought to a newly constructed dormitory-inn where there was a table, sufficient benches and also very suitable, clean resting beds. On their request to receive something to eat and to drink, the servant said:** “Only bread and wine against direct payment. There is no more provision of other food.”

[16] **The chief said:** “Then bring us sufficient bread and wine, for we all are very hungry and thirsty. No one should worry about the payment.”

[17] **Then a light was brought into the dormitory and at the same time plenty of bread and wine. The chief paid everything immediately, after which the servant and his helpers left the**

dormitory, and left the Herodians alone who grabbed the food and the wine, and in a short time they ate a considerable quantity.

68. THE CHIEF'S PLANS



WHEN the Herodians felt completely alone, the chief said very quietly to his subordinates: “Listen, let tomorrow no one betray – not even by a face expression – why we have actually undertaken this truly unfortunate and wild trip to this place, but let everyone of us pretend to have a sickness. Then on my account, which will be expensive for Herod, we will make use of the bath resort for a couple of days and we will then take leave on the 3rd day as being completely healed. Yes, if we had not lost the 4 ships with the 130 brave soldiers in that fatal storm on the lake, we would have talked differently to that servant, who is probably the most important manager of this institution. But we are here as shipwrecked people without any might or luster, and so, the point is to keep silent as a wall about the actual purpose of our coming here, for the slightest disclosure of the matter would bring us into the greatest trouble in this purely Roman nest.

[2] The skippers from Tiberias, who very wisely stayed on the shore on the other side, told us the real truth. It happened to us as they said. And now I swear a holy oath on my death and life that I will never let myself be used to trace that mysterious Nazarene, not even if, as a reward, a whole, big kingdom would be offered to me.

[3] It is easy to fight against enemies that can be seen and whose strength can be calculated, but against an invisible enemy, whose might, power and strength cannot be calculated by anyone, our blind and stupid Herod must fight himself. We will no more play the fool for him.

[4] As far as we are concerned, the Nazarene may raise Himself 12 times King over all the Jews, and we will never more take action against Him. He is certainly wiser, better and mightier than our Herod and his accomplices in the temple who are all completely loaded with gold and precious stones.

The people praise Him everywhere and they expect of course somehow too much from Him. But no matter what, from now on, we are no more His enemies and will also never be.

[5] It is of course a great pity of those 130 soldiers who lost their life as an injurious offering for the Herodian foolishness. But all together, it is maybe still good that it happened that way. For if we would have arrived here with them on land and would have used force on this purely Roman ground, then who knows how we would have fared. Certainly not too well, for it is not unknown to me that the Nazarene has secretly even a very good reputation among the very prominent Romans. In short, we know now how we have to behave ourselves here, so that no one will be suspicious.

[6] Once we are back in Jerusalem, I surely will present Herod the bill, about which he certainly will scratch and pinch himself behind the ears for 10 long years. And if he refuses to pay me, then I will immediately join a Roman legion and will then tell him as a Roman, first between 4 eyes, what it means to invade with his soldiers, without the permission of Rome, a Roman territory that has a legal assignment. Then that old fox will rather prefer to pay that expensive bill than to let himself be betrayed by us to the relentless Romans. For I know that he is not very popular, especially not with the supreme governor Cyrenius.

[7] But now, before we completely go to sleep, it would be a good idea if someone would check outside whether we are guarded, what the condition of our ship is, and if the storm is still raging.”

[8] **One of them, who was the captain, said:** “That is all very nice, but if a guard will ask us what we are doing outside, then what will we answer him?”

[9] **The chief said:** “That is simple. You should tell him the truth, and if necessary, you can also clarify to him that certain natural necessities of man cannot be decently done in a clean dormitory-inn, and then the guard will certainly not have any objection.”

69. THE LORD IS AHEAD OF THE WISH OF THE HERODIANS



WHEN the captain himself went outside and met at once a guard who directly asked him what he was seeking outside of the dormitory.

[2] The captain told him straightforward the reason for it, and the guard let him alone.

[3] Being completely amazed, the captain returned to the dormitory, because the whole storm had lied down completely. So much so that the lake was as smooth as a mirror as far as he could see, and the ship on the shore did not move in the least by any wave.

[4] This message made **the chief** very cheerful and said: “Now it is a pity that we have no more wine and no more bread. Now I would like to stay awake for a couple of hours and rejoice with you that we are alive.”

[5] **The commander** said: “It is still very lively in the main building and also in the big bath resort. Maybe we still could manage through our not too unfriendly guard to receive more bread and wine on direct cash payment.”

[6] **The chief** said: “Just try it.”

[7] The chief had hardly expressed his wish in the dormitory when in the house I had already made clear to Marcus that he should directly let them bring more wine and bread to the dormitory – but of the best kind – which also happened immediately, for everything which they spoke and deliberated in the dormitory was loudly expressed with us in the house by Raphael, which made them very cheerful.

[8] The captain just wanted to go out of the dormitory and discuss with the guard for more bread and wine, when a servant with several helpers came into the dormitory, who brought them twice as much bread and more than 3 times as much wine as the first time, about which the chief and all the others were very much surprised.

[9] **The chief wanted to pay immediately, but the servant said:** “Also tomorrow there will be time for that”.

[10] **Then he immediately left with his helpers, and those in the dormitory did not know what to do. One looked surprised at the other, but not one of them could figure out by whose initiative this second, bigger sending of bread and wine was brought.**

[11] **After thinking about it for a while, the chief spoke as follows:** “Listen, it all becomes somehow clear to me. This dormitory here, although strongly built from cedar wood, must certainly have a secret opening by which the guard can listen in and hear what is said to one another. If something illegal would happen, one will certainly have to very strictly justify himself before a judge the next day about each thoughtless word that was spoken.

[12] During our first deliberation we spoke very quietly and softly and the guard must absolutely not have heard or understood anything, for I expressed my opinion to you in the old Hebrew language. But our wish for still more bread and wine I spoke in the Greek language, rather loudly and well hearable, which the guard must certainly have heard. He presented this immediately to a servant of the bath resort, and he hurried to be ahead of our wish, which also happened. The fact that he was more kind to us than the first time will certainly have the following reason: the lord of the bath resort must have well inspected our valuable weapons. He must have seen their high value and then said to a servant that he can serve us better and more generously, since we also must be capable to pay for a more generous and better service. This is how it must have happened and not otherwise, and we should not rack our brains over that anymore.

[13] Let us eat and drink now on the well being of all good and truthful men, and not further think about our bad adventure. May Jehovah be forgiving and merciful on the souls of those who drowned in the lake. Amen.”

[14] **When the guard heard the chief’s words, he came into the dormitory and said with a serious, friendly face:** “Chief of this little group of yours, it absolutely did not happen the way you

explained everything as your opinion, which I very well heard and understood,. For I did not give instruction to a servant to bring you more bread and wine, of which you all can be very much assured, completely according to the truth, and this under the most strict vow. The reason behind it must be quite different.

[15] Do not further worry about that, for we live here in a region where miracles are not rare. Therefore, this bath resort received the name: ‘Wonder Bath’. For they say that even its existence was already in itself entirely miraculous, and so also its healing power is always truly miraculous. So be very confident, for this resort is a resort of salvation and not of curse and its judgment.”

70. THE CONVERSATION BETWEEN THE CAPTAIN AND THE CHIEF



AFTER this unexpected assurance of the guard, who left the dormitory again, our Herodians were on the one hand very satisfied, but on the other hand there was great unrest in the mind of especially the captain, who was a Greek, and also of the chief, who was a Jew, because immediately more bread and wine was brought while they hardly had expressed their wish.

[2] Now **the captain said**: “Wonders – wonders would so-called be a daily happening here? So there must be some kind of oracle here by which even someone’s most secret thoughts are not safe because one or the other Man of wonders makes them loudly known to the one who had those thoughts.

[3] If this is so – which seems very probable – then they also will precisely know word for word what we have discussed about the caution that we will observe, and then this caution will not be worth much. For if the men in the main building have directly detected our wish for bread and wine on some magic table, then they just as well and precisely must have heard our first deliberation, and they must have understood it very well, even if we had expressed ourselves in the old Egyptian language.

[4] The best thing is that we had no hostile plans, not against

the Nazarene, nor against no matter who of His followers. And what concerns Herod, they certainly will agree with our opinion. In short, tomorrow this curious matter will become clear from itself. So let us be optimistic, as the guard said. For according to him, this resort is a resort of salvation and not of curse and its judgment.”

[5] **On this, the chief said:** “If it is as you think, captain, we can already assume beforehand that our plan to stay in this bath resort, out of tactical considerations, will not go without problems, and they also will be completely informed about the 4 ships that sank, the 130 drowned soldiers and the true goal of our coming here. How will we justify ourselves if they will call us to account for that?”

[6] The more I seriously think about it now, the more confused it becomes in my mind, and therefore, the very good bread does not really taste good to me, neither the excellent wine. What do you think captain? Or anyone else of you, what is the best thing we can do now?”

[7] **The captain said very boldly:** “This is again much easier, for if these men know everything, then they also will know that regarding the dumb and proud Herod we brought good arguments beforehand against his hard will until we finally and with obvious reluctance complied with it. And did we not accomplish our task as limited as possible? We very well could have stayed in Tiberias for another couple of weeks on the account of Herod if those fishermen and skippers would not have forced us by their story to break up. For firstly the inhabitants of Tiberias very much wanted to get rid of us, and they certainly forced us by their stories that they probably exaggerated, to perform our duty which they knew. And secondly: if we would not have done that, who knows if they would not have sent a messenger to Herod to smear us as much as possible.

[8] Of course, the skippers advised against our quick action because of the hard wind and the falling night – more for their own sake than ours – but out of fear of being betrayed we had to play it

courageously and quickly. So we are not guilty of our undertaking, but in the first place Herod, and then the circumstances by which we came now especially in Tiberias. Thus, I am very cheerful and am not afraid for the lords and judges of this resort, even if the Nazarene would be present, which would actually be very pleasant to me, for He must be a very good, righteous and wise Man, as I already heard several times from the people, and with such people it is easy to talk, since we always have an anti-Herod attitude. Do you not all agree with me?"

[9] They agreed with the captain, and then they ate and drank in a good mood. Also the chief became more cheerful.

71. THE WISH OF THE CAPTAIN AND ITS FULFILLMENT



WHEN they all became more enthusiastic from the wine, and having said all kinds of very nice words about Me and bad words about Herod, whom they always called the evil and dumb Antipas, **the chief** said: "Now we are all together here as friends and brothers, the few soldiers not excluded because they are also human beings just like we and they also shared the bitter fate on the lake with us, and through their great efforts they contributed a lot to our salvation.

[2] Although we are now – all glory and honor to Jehovah the Lord – very cheerful and full of courage, and I also think that we can make good impression before a Roman judge of this place, but it seems not to be the time now for a too great optimism.

[3] So it still may be advisable to discuss further how we would answer the questions of the judge – before whom we certainly will be led tomorrow – about our undertaking in this region, which is in fact totally unlawful without the permission of Rome. For I still do not completely trust the country's quietness of this night despite the good hope which you, my friend (that is the captain), have expressed before.

[4] I have the impression that tomorrow we will have to endure another storm which will not be less, although not on the lake.

That is why it really would not harm us if we would deliberate as to how we will save us from this fatal situation.”

[5] **The captain said:** “But friend, what is the use of such deliberation, and how can it help us? Has it not deeper penetrated in you that there are men in that main building who probably also know our most secret thoughts, even before we have thought them in ourselves?”

[6] Look, the hard Romans will never treat men with such bread and wine whom the next day they want to lead before a severe court of law, but rather with miserable bread and bad water, in chains and dark dungeons, and still other horrible things, because the Romans never have the least spark of humaneness for criminals. So let us not say another word about what we cannot change anymore, not even with all the money of the world.

[7] It is my wish to meet that famous Nazarene, and to talk with Him about this matter. Only He could help us all in the best way. I put all my trust in Him.”

[8] **The chief said:** “Yes, that would be very good of course, if He would really be here. But what if He finally would not be here after all?”

[9] **The captain said:** “Then surely one of His delegates will be present, who will act in His spirit and who will administer justice. And we certainly will be able to speak with him reasonably and truthfully. So let us be as happy and cheerful as much as possible, for today we certainly have suffered enough, as if we died in the storm 10 times.”

[10] **After the captain had said that, a servant of Marcus was again sent by Me to the Herodians, but this time without bread and wine.**

[11] **When he came to the amazed Herodians, he asked them (a servant):** “Who of you is the courageous captain, whose name is Leander?”

[12] **The captain said:** “Friend, I am the one. What is the matter? What must be done?”

[13] **The servant said:** “Listen, the One in whom you put your trust and with whom you would like to speak, is here and He wants

you to come to Him and to speak with you. So follow me to the main building.”

[14] **At first the captain was very surprised by this invitation.**

[15] **The chief did not know what to do from sheer fright, and he said half loudly to himself:** “O, I knew that this matter would have a bad end.”

[16] **The servant said:** “Why are you afraid for nothing for the greatest and highest Benefactor of men? The one who will believe in Him, build on Him and trust in Him, will never be lost. Now come with me, captain Leander, for the Lord only wants to speak with you.”

72. CAPTAIN LEANDER BEFORE THE LORD



AFTER these words of the servant, everyone felt lighter in his heart.

[2] **The captain went at once with the servant to the main building, where he brought him directly to Me and said to him:** “Look, this is the Lord.”

[3] **Now the captain bowed deeply before Me and said:** “Lord, be not only forgiving and merciful to me, but also to the other sinners, because we were only blind and weak helpers of the evil Herod, for he put us into his service after much pressure. But today we have decided not to serve him anymore and we also will eternally never persecute You again. Yes, if it is possible, we would like to be of service to You today or tomorrow, but not ever again the evil and dumb, lustful Herod.”

[4] **I said:** “Leander, I forgive you your sins. He who believes in Me and who lives and acts according to My teaching will not be lost.”

[5] **My teaching consists very simply out of the following:** acknowledge the one, only true God and Lord, and thus also Me, for I have come into this world from Him, and I carry His Spirit in Me. And love God above all and your fellowman as yourself. Then you will receive eternal life.

[6] As your trust has opened the way to Me, so also your faith in Me will unclothe the way to eternal life.

[7] But you also know the laws that God gave on the Sinai through Moses to the people of Israel. Keep to this, and no more to your many false, dead gods and other traditions and customs. Then you can be a good instrument in My Kingdom.”

[8] Full of joy **the captain** said: “O Lord, where will You establish Your Kingdom? Where is Your castle, so that I can travel to it tomorrow and offer You there my services as a brave soldier?”

[9] I said: “Listen, My Kingdom, which I will establish now again among the people on this Earth, is not an earthly kingdom as from a king that you have served, and of which there are still legion on the whole Earth, but My Kingdom is a spiritual Kingdom and is not visible for the physical eyes with all kinds of pomp and splendor, for it exists within man. And the strong castle, which can eternally never be conquered by a power, is the faithful, loving heart, which is full of trust and without pride, without envy, jealousy, without lie and deceit, but instead of that, full of humility, meekness, patience and mercy. In this, will I, the one and only true Lord and King of all existence and life, take My residence with every man whose heart and mind will possess the mentioned qualities.

[10] So if you want to enter into service as a soldier with Me, you must be familiar with My teaching in the castle that I have shown you now, out of free will and full of faith, trust, and full of love for God and your fellowman.

[11] Of course, you still cannot understand this now in the full light of the truth. However, believe, live and act very zealously in what you believe. Then the Spirit of God’s eternal love will awaken in you and will guide you into all truth. And only in the light of that truth you will recognize the One who says this to you now. And once you have completely recognized Him according to the truth, then everything that still seems a deeply hidden secret to you, will become very understandable and sunny clear to you. Proclaim this also to your companions.”

[12] After these words of Mine, **captain Leander was completely astonished and said:** “O Lord and Master, no one has ever spoken like You on this Earth. I certainly do not fully understand everything, but one thing has become clear to me from Your words: that You do not strive for a crown nor for a scepter of this world, but only that all men would come back to the ancient truth of the innermost spiritual life that has been lost since long.

[13] Although our old wise men searched with great zeal for this lost kingdom of the full, living truth, and here and there they also found some traces of it, but even the wisest searcher was not able to lift up the ominous veil of our Isis.

[14] But You Yourself, o Lord and Master, are the true Isis, and You lift up the dense veil for us men. And this is in my opinion the true, spiritual Kingdom of life, which You establish now among us people on this Earth and of which You are the only true Lord and King in Your Spirit, of which You were and of which from now on You will always remain. For if Love, Truth and Life are one and the same Power, then life is as everlasting and indestructible as the truth as such must remain the truth eternally.

[15] Up to here I understood the meaning and spirit of the words that You spoke to me, unworthy man. I expect a further and deeper penetrating light of the love and mercy from Him who is the only, real and fully true King of the Kingdom of the inner, spiritual life.

[16] But now the question is: what should we do with that evil and very dumb Herod. How can this lustful man even have the idea in his powerlessness to persecute the most loving Person who brings back the truth of life of all men? O, that stone-blind villain.”

[17] **I said:** “Just leave Herod alone, and let him not be of much concern to you anymore, for his luster will soon come to a complete end.

[18] **But what your chief has decided regarding the compensation for the 4 sunken ships of the citizens of Tiberias, this he also should execute, and I will support him with the power of My will. In the future he will not send many more soldiers to bind the Truth**

with chains and finally even kill and completely destroy Him.”

[19] Deeply moved, the captain thanked Me for this assignment to the chief, and he promised Me that the execution of My wish would not be left out.

[20] On this, he also asked Me what would be justified for the chief to do, especially on behalf of the widows and orphans that were left behind, regarding the 130 soldiers who perished in the lake, who also were human beings and who had to comply to the will of that brute, and, as known, against the most miserable wages. For these soldiers who were very devoted and loyal to Herod and who formed his lifeguard, received from him the favor to marry, just like any other citizen. And now that the soldiers were no more, who would now take care and feed their wives and children?

[21] I said: “The soldiers who perished were like trained hunting dogs who did not have any love nor mercy towards the people whom they tormented in the name of Herod, without necessity or assignment, in order to acquire for themselves a considerable compensation for their meager salary. Lately, their practices became often secretly so terrible that those who were put under pressure by them became really desperate.

[22] Through their secret practices, against which no one dared to complain from fear to later be tormented by them even harder, they acquired many treasures, and their surviving relatives have more to spend than you and your chief. They have well hidden their possessions, and for a worldly judge it hardly would be possible to make them confess that they possess goods unlawfully.

[23] But Herod must indemnify those who were often greatly suppressed by his loyal hunting dogs, because he neglected to give the severe laws to his hunting dogs, according to which they were not allowed to treat the poor citizens at their own will. Besides, he even approved it when he heard about the practices of his hunting dogs, for by this he did not have to pay higher wages.

[24] Those terrible hunting dogs finally received their deserved reward, and Herod must only indemnify the damage they caused,

about which the chief will very well be able to take care. And now you may go back to your dormitory again where you are expected with great desire. We will see each other back tomorrow.”

[25] The captain thanked Me very enthusiastically for My teaching and patience, and went then fully comforted to his companions and told them everything he heard from Me.

73. THE GOOD INSIGHT AND INTENTION OF THE CHIEF



It is easy to imagine what kind of scene the story of the captain caused with the chief and also the others.

[2] The chief reflected mostly on the description of the 130 drown soldiers, and this made him discontented, for he had not known the bad qualities of the loyal servants of Herod before. But now he came to realize that the things, which he observed from them, came into his mind during the conversation of the captain, and so he said (**the chief**): “Yes, yes, the great Nazarene, who is filled with His pure divine, all-perceiving Spirit, is completely right, for now a great number of things become clear to me that I noticed from time to time with the mentioned soldiers. They only received a low salary from Herod. Only in the charging and extortion of taxes they were allowed, out of every 100 silver coins, to keep 1 for themselves. Their low salary and the few silver coins from the taxes could of course not be enough to sufficiently maintain themselves and an often large family.

[3] Besides, I often met one or the other in inns of high standing where they let themselves be generously served, just like people of our kind. So I also saw them several times with money changers and brokers, but it all did not strike us because they otherwise were very correct and very loyal to us and the king, and nothing could be charged against them. But now their infamous case becomes clear, and now we understand many things which before made a strange impression on us.

[4] So I also repeatedly heard at different places all kinds of complaints and quiet curses about the heavy suppression of Herod.

But I, and also you, and still many other civil servants and servants of Herod did not pay attention to these complaints, for it is surely known that man is never in the best of moods when he has to pay his taxes and other contributions to his lord, who is in his eyes a useless servant of laziness, of a lecherous luxurious life, of pride, lovelessness and still many other vices.

[5] That is why it was never investigated. The soldiers of Herod had a free hand and could suppress the people according to their own evil will, especially with the often lawful collections of taxes, without being criticized by anyone. And even if someone went to a Roman judge and complained about the rude, heavy and often unaffordable taxes of that miserable Herod, then this was of no or little use. At the most he received the advice to redeem himself from Herod and to become a Roman citizen.

[6] A lot of rich people could do that of course, and have also wisely done that, but what could the poor people do except to let them be extorted by Herod in an unscrupulous manner? But now it soon will be quite different. As soon as we will be back in Jerusalem, Hell must be made as hot as possible for the king, and he will be forced to pay indemnification in a manner about which he never could dream.

[7] O, just wait, you loveless and extremely proud, lustful king! In the future you will come to know us, with wide open eyes from fear, and you will understand the reason why I kindly often dissuaded you to persecute people who obviously are gifted by God with a higher Spirit, as long as you did not receive an order from Rome to do that. But he never took notice of that advice, but acted at his own desire, and so now he soon will taste the fruits of his stubbornness which will certainly not taste nice to him. May the Spirit and will of the Lord and Master be with us and work with us.

[8] From what you, friend Leander, have told us from His words, it is clear that our great Nazarene is the Messiah who came from the Heavens into this world, faithfully and truthfully according to the many promises of the prophets, and equipped with all divine

wisdom and power in which I now unshakably believe, for He proved it to us in an obvious manner. For by the power of His all-perceiving and all-knowing wisdom, and by the pure divine power of His will, He created the storm on the lake, by which the loyal hunting dogs of Herod received their already long deserved reward. So all honor goes to Him.

[9] But also for ourselves we have to make up for a lot of things of what we did wrong to our fellowman. And hail to us if He would make us happy, in the very strength of our life, with His love and mercy which He gave us now so abundantly while we did not deserve it. And for this, we can highly glorify and praise His name forever.

[10] But you, 10 soldiers who were saved by His mercy together with us, should also awaken your conscious and see how far it is burdened by those sins for which they perished in the water. Regret your sins with the unshakable intention to make up as much as possible for the harm that you caused to those with whom you dealt, so that you also may find mercy with the Lord and Master over all things in this world. Because now we have experienced with our sense organs that He is a Being who has an extremely great patience with the blind people. But if despite all the warnings, the people persist in their evilness and do not want to improve their life, then His patience runs out and the punishment will relentlessly follow.

[11] Think well about what I as your chief have said and advised to you now, for against the eternally active divine almightiness, powerless man with his stubbornness cannot do anything. Woe the one who will be grabbed by the justified wrath of God.”

74. THE DELIBERATION OF THE HERODIANS



AFTER these words of the chief, the 10 took courage and promised under a solemn vow that they very thoroughly would follow his advice, although they were not aware of any sin like the 130 had committed, for they did not have to serve Herod in that manner, since they always were only employed as guards of the castle and the palace, which the chief, the captain and also their other superiors would certainly know.

[2] **The chief said:** “That we surely know, but every person who once comes to serve someone like Herod, is just like me a great sinner. If he wants to take part in the mercy of the highest, all-knowing and almighty One he must completely purify himself of his many sins. Firstly by admitting that they are against the divine will, and secondly by really abhorring and regretting them, and thirdly by never committing them again and take up the firm intention to make up again as much as possible for the injustice that was committed to the people.

[3] I myself will certainly do that, and I wish and advice everyone of us to take it to heart and to do it, because the great Lord and Master has shown us here an extremely great mercy and compassion, firstly already by the fact that He did not let us perish in the raging waves of the lake like the others, and secondly that He did not let us be captured by the severe Romans and bring us before a court of life or death, but He has shown extremely great kindness to us, and He will also not withhold this from us in the future if we will do everything that I have advised now to you according to my opinion.”

[4] **After this second good speech of the chief they all raised their hands and swore that they would take his words to heart and would act accordingly. And the chief was satisfied with that.**

[5] **However, the captain made still the following remark:** “Friend, in the course of your good and true speech to the 10 soldiers, you also made the remark that everyone who serves Herod, is already in that capacity a sinner. And this is also

completely true, for he always exclusively wants what is unjust in the eyes of God and men. So the one who helps him through his loyal service, which he confirmed by an oath, to carry out his injustice with the poor people, will sin each time that he carries out the will of that unscrupulous lustful man. If we will stay in his service it will be very difficult to keep away from sin.

[6] So my opinion is as follows: once we have made Herod soft in the manner that we have discussed, and took care that he will pay big indemnifications, we will also indemnify ourselves and will then quit his service, for as we said, to stay in his service would mean the same as to want to sin. Am I right or not?"

[7] **The chief said:** "You are completely right about that, and once we will have reached our goal with him, we will also carry it out immediately. But we surely will receive some more instructions of the Lord tomorrow concerning that matter. And now I think – now that it is already midnight and that we became very tired – that in the name of the Lord and Master, who showed us so much mercy, we should give our body the necessary rest."

[8] **They were all very glad about that, and especially the soldiers who really exhausted their energy during the storm.**

[9] **The captain still said to the chief, and so also to all those present:** "Listen, before we will give in to a complete physical rest, here and wherever we are, it is the custom to express our sincere thanks in our heart to Him, whom we have recognized as the Lord and Master, for the very great mercy and compassion that He has abundantly shown to us here instead of a just punishment. So let us say: O Lord and Master, who are filled with the fullness of divine love, wisdom, power and might, we thank You for Your great kindness and mercy to us great sinners here, instead of the deserved punishment. And we ask You for the whole next future that You would not leave us with Your mercy, love and compassion, for from now on we also want to completely belong to You. O, dear, great Lord and Master, to whom all spirits, powers and elements obey, accept us also as citizens of the Kingdom that You now establish forever on this Earth among the

blind people. And in the future do not let too great temptations come over us, but strengthen us with Your mercy and compassion. To You only goes all our love, honor and all glorification. May everything that exists, lives and breathes praise You. May Your name be hollowed in us.”

[10] When the captain had said this prayer of thanks, the chief praised him very much for that, and also all the others. And then they went to rest for the night. We in the main building did the same and slept well until it became fully morning.

75. THE BEAUTIFUL MORNING AT THE LAKE



S always, I was the first One up, but also the disciples woke up almost at the same time with Me, and they went outside with Me, actually to the shore of the lake, over which a refreshing morning breeze was blowing that set the water surface in a pleasant movement while the sun was already above the horizon. On the water surface of the lake appeared at some places very large groups of all kinds of floating birds, big and small ones that sought their well tasting morning meal.

[2] **The Roman** who was also already present, said to Me: “Lord and Master, such a morning in such a beautiful environment refreshes and strengthens the heart and mind of man very much, but with this I have to make the remark that the morning, which is actually the most beautiful and most pleasant time of the day, is always the shortest lasting, for as soon as the lovely sun comes above the horizon, then will also start the day with its always increasingly dull, same monotony, and this will then last with little variety until the evening. O, if on Earth there would be a country where the morning would exist as if forever, then I would like to live there and rejoice about life continuously. Our short lasting mornings have very often filled my mind with some kind of melancholy instead of joy. O Lord and Master, is there no where on this Earth a country where the morning would last at least longer than here with us?”

[3] **I** said: “Now it is again a little the gentile with his eternal Aurora¹ who has spoken out of you. Did you not hear Raphael’s teaching yesterday about the Earth and its different phenomena, and did you not understand its necessary truth? With the order that has been established, there can impossibly be a country with an eternal morning.

[4] Yes, in My Kingdom in the other life there will be an eternal morning, but out of which this will exist, you would understand even much less than what you have understood from Raphael’s explanation. But if you want to enjoy the morning longer on this Earth, then always go a couple of hours earlier outside. Then you will be able to enjoy the morning for more than 3 hours.

[5] Besides, every day has at each moment its pleasant and unpleasant sides, as well as the evening and also the night. The important thing is how, with his mind, he will look upon it each time of the day.

[6] Look, the sun just came up now, and the pleasantness of the morning still lasts and will still last for more than 1 hour. And so you still can continue to enjoy the charm of the morning. After that, the morning will slowly change into the full day, and you will rejoice the day of life as much as now on the early morning. So let the ancient institution on this Earth continue to exist without objection, for it is very good and very useful.

[7] If men on this Earth would, out of their free will, be as good as the ancient institution of the Earth, then for many there would be already here a true, spiritual morning of life, to which every human being should strive for before anything else. Did you well understand these very natural words of Mine?”

[8] **The Roman** said: “Yes, exalted Master and Lord. I thank You for this lesson. Now also the day with its often multiple various appearances is very joyful for me.”

¹ The Roman goddess of dawn.

76. A CONVERSATION ABOUT THE MIGRATORY BIRDS



AFTER our conversation about nature, also our Greeks came with the doctor from Melita and all those who were present here, and they rejoiced about the beautiful morning, although it was often cooler during this time of the year.

[2] The innkeeper from Jesaira, who was also still staying here, and the skippers whom we know, looked at the covered ship that brought the Herodians to the shore during the nightly storm and who were now still resting in their dormitory. And they were surprised that this ship, which was already quite old and absolutely not strongly build, did not sink with the other 4 *ships*.

[3] **A skipper** said to the innkeeper: “Friend, there on the shore is the Savior. Even if that ship were in a 10 times more miserable state than now, then for sure, the will of the Lord would still have saved it.”

[4] The innkeeper praised the skipper and agreed with him.

[5] **Kisjona** asked **Raphael** why, during this autumn, so many water birds were mostly landing by the shores, of which a few species could otherwise only be seen in little numbers on the Lake of Galilee.

[6] **Raphael** said: “Friend, there is no other meaning than when at the time of their great migration from the big lakes and seas of the High North there was a totally different wind blowing than usual during this time. And because of that wind, which was unusual for the time of the migration of these birds, this lake is now more abundant with these animals than normally. Another very natural consequence of that phenomenon is that this year’s winter will be very soft. Or else, these birds would have gone further to the south to seek their place of stay for the winter. Thus, behind this very natural phenomenon there is nothing special or remarkable.

[7] The Greeks, of whom quite many are living at this lake and who very well know how to catch these birds, will surely diminish their great quantity, for these birds are true delicacies to them, and

they also can very well use and utilize their feathers. And this, friend, is everything what concerns these birds.”

[8] **Kisjona said:** “Could we Jews actually not hunt these birds, and just like the Greeks make them useful for us?”

[9] **Raphael said:** “O sure, if you knew how to catch them and then prepare them as delicacy. But since you still possess a great quantity of all kinds of very pure food with which you can satisfy yourselves, you should – unless in time of need – let these wild birds be caught for the table of the poor Greeks, so that they can prepare and eat them. Just like the pigs, hares, gazelles, deer and still more of those wild animals.”

[10] **Our Kisjona was completely satisfied with this and lost his desire to catch these kinds of birds for himself.**

[11] **While those present were still discussing about this and that, also our men from Joppe came to us to the shore, pushed themselves towards Me, bowed deeply before Me and thanked with highly raised hands for the healing of the day before, and for the unexpected friendly acceptance and care.**

[12] **I said to them:** “You do well in thanking Me, but next time thank Me only in your heart without outer gestures, and live and act always according to My teaching. Then this will be more pleasing to Me than the deep bowing, raising of hands and those many loud words. Did you all understand this well?”

[13] **The fisherman who was born on Cyprus said:** “O Lord and Master full of divine power, might and wisdom, we have well understood Your true and wise advice now, have accepted it as a godly advice and we will in the future also act according to it. But allow me, o Lord and Master, to make a remark as an apology.”


[14] **I said:** “Then speak and lighten your mind.”

[15] **The fisherman said:** “Although You are a visible Human Being before us and have a fleshly body, You nevertheless are entirely one Being with God’s eternal Spirit and one and the same personality. *And* it is very true that a person who truly believes that, like we do, can pray to You in the inner quietness of his mind and heart and can thank You without outer gestures. You will then

certainly hear and also answer his prayer and be pleased at that quiet, but nevertheless spiritually active and true gratitude. But look, we men are used from childhood on to make our prayers and thanks go together with outer gestures in order to make also externally visible what we lively and truly feel in ourselves to those from whom we ask something or who we thank for a received good deed, *and this* according to the ancient usual tradition.

[16] And if we are often compelled to bow our knees before those who are our equals, then I think that it is unspeakably more suitable to bow our knees and our whole body before the Lord of eternity. For also our body is only His work, and it is the carrier of the living soul who can be spoiled if he will give in too much to the lusts of his flesh. However, if he will adapt his body to his high, inner, spiritual striving, and will spiritualize it at the same time, then he probably will by that not act contrary to Your order, which is the might and the power of Your eternal divine will, and would not in some way be displeasing to You.”

77. THE DANGERS OF CEREMONIAL RELIGION AND CEREMONIAL PRAYER

 SAID: “Friend, you have well spoken now, and My heart feels refreshed on the *good* intention of your words. So it is right when a person who prays and thanks for something, will behave as you have explained it now. But then man should always have fully the same attitude as yours, and only attach importance to the inner value of life, and the outer only as if dragging it along as a burden, making it less important than his inner power. To pray, to thank and to honor in this manner would, as said, be very right and good and well pleasing to Me.

[2] But people are not staying like you now before Me. They all too soon attach more importance to the outer gestures than they should according to the truth of the inner life, and the only true interior that does not go together with the exterior they regard as

insufficient and finally even as worthless. And then it easily can come to the point that priests, who are so called initiated, and chosen and called by God, will mislead the people by saying that it is sufficient for a common person to only respect the interior as prescribed by them, and to honor it highly. For according to them the individual inner word that the people are personally directing to God in a praying or thanking manner, is without any value in God's eyes and is useless because God is absolutely not pleased with that, and He is only justly dissatisfied since such independent inner praying, asking and thanking is considered by God as a brutality and blasphemy.

[3] And what will finally become of all that? Look, the people are leaving God more and more, instead of coming ever closer to Him in their heart, in the love and in the true, living faith and trust. The trusting, true and pure love changes into a spooky fear, and the living faith in the truth *changes* into a dark heathenish superstition by which the lazy priestly caste, which is capable of every deceit, is doing very well in earthly respect. By this, the so called common people are often desperately suffocating in all kinds of spiritual need and despair, darkness, poverty and blindness by which often also their body cannot take up anymore the nourishment that it needs, for the priests, who are so called the only ones who are called by God, who multiply like flies, who are lazy and work-shy while they make all kinds of promises to the people about heavenly pleasures in the beyond and still more often horrible threats with eternal hellish punishments, torments and pains, truly rob away all things before the mouth of *the common people* and fatten their belly with it. And this you can see now with the Pharisees, as well as with all pagan priests.

[4] And look, all this will gradually come from the outer gestures while asking, thanking and praying, which initially seemed of course very innocent and even morally suitable. And then God must finally call out and shout to the people again through the mouth of newly awakened prophets: 'Look, this people honors Me with the lips and with idol and dead worldly ceremonies, but their

heart is far away from Me.’

[5] So remember the following and make it as a permanent guide for your life: God is a Spirit in Himself, full of love, truth, wisdom and power, unchangeable since eternity, and can thus only be worshipped in the spirit and in the truth that is within man.

[6] So if someone has a request, namely if God, the only true Creator and Father of all men and angels, would like to help him in this or that, then he should not direct his request to a temple or a synagogue, and also not go to a priest, but should go alone in a little room – namely that very quiet little room of his heart – and pray there to God, and ask Him, the most loving Father, for the right help. Then the Father, who hears and sees everything, even in the most hidden place, will always gladly give what is justly asked to the one who will only actively pray in the right manner and in the spirit of truth. You can all be completely assured about that. But over an open prayer that is given as performance in the presence of people, by which the heart often feels very little, the Father in Heaven will never speak out His almighty ‘amen’.

[7] Understand and remember this very well, and act also accordingly if you do not want to see your descendants fall into an even darker heathendom than is now common everywhere among the people on this Earth.

[8] Making charming gestures can seem to be something valuable to the vain, blind, proud and greedy people, but to the One who is the eternal Love and Truth Himself and who always perceives what is living in the deepest and what is truthful within the spirit, the gesture does not count, but only the living, most inner truth of life.

[9] If you ask something to the Father, then do not ask Him so much for the goods of this Earth, where the blind and foolish heathens and also the God-forsaken Jews and Pharisees strive for, but rather ask Him for the imperishable treasures for the soul and the spirit. Then these will never be refused to anyone. However, what concerns the goods that are necessary for the temporal livelihood, they will simply and freely be given on top of it to

everyone whose striving and asking and seeking is only directed to the Kingdom of God and its most loving justice.

[10] The one who has become strong in the spirit, and therefore in the Kingdom of God, will also be a lord over the things of the world and will never have to endure a great want of food for his body. But it is better – also for those who are awakened in the spirit – to revel in the goods of the Heavens of God and to endure a small lack of the goods of this Earth. Remember this also and observe it with deeds.”

78. THE TRIAL OF THE HEARTLESS IN THE BEYOND



O always gather treasures which cannot be eaten away by the moths and cannot be destroyed by rust and decay.

[2] Beware of the goods and treasures of this world, for in these rests the evil spirit of temptation to all sins.

[3] If you pray to God and say in your heart: ‘Father in Heaven, lead us not into temptation,’ then say, think and wish that He would not provide you abundantly with earthly goods and treasures, but ask Him only for the daily bread. Then He will not withhold it from you since He knows best what you need.

[4] If you love God above all according to My teaching, and thus also *love* one another, as every person loves himself and takes care of his own well being in all possible ways, you will never have to complain among each other concerning some need, for the need and the poverty among the people on this Earth exist simply and solely because of their mutual lack of love. And that is always the result of unbelief or dark superstition. For he who does not believe in the one, eternal only true God, then how will he honor Him and love Him above all, and from that love, his fellowman as himself?

[5] The one who is largely provided with the treasures of the Earth, surely sees his poor fellowman, but because he himself does not have to suffer any want, he says: ‘I am provided, what do I care about the others. Let everyone take care of himself. Then he will not have to suffer any want.’

[6] But to such person I will say later: ‘Why did you so much more take care of you than for your fellowman and have by that taken away from the others what is due to them from Me? Therefore, you will now in My Kingdom be forsaken and you will have to endure great poverty and want.’

[7] And if he will excuse himself with the remark that he did not believe in Me because no one informed him in the right manner about Me, I will say to him: ‘Then who informed you about a right according to which you, because you are stronger, could take away the goods of the Earth from your fellowmen who had the same right to possess what is necessary, and have piled them up for yourself? Did you not have to act according to the correct understanding and the right that is proclaimed before everyone’s eyes and ears by the arrangement of the Earth and its nature, since you clearly should have noticed that the Earth with its goods are and should not only be for you alone but also for everyone else?’

[8] Since you disregarded what your understanding should have stirred you up, therefore, here in My Kingdom the need and poverty of your soul will also be disregarded.

[9] But if you say that you could not believe in an only true God because no one informed you in the right manner, then I will say to you: ‘Now look what a terrible liar you are. Do you perhaps think that those who are really filled with God’s Spirit and are enlightened, are, just like the worldly revelers like you, overflowing in all the treasures and goods of this Earth? O, then you are terribly mistaken.’

[10] They came to the door of your house as poor and needy people and wanted to inform you of the one, only true God, but you did not want to let them come to you from greedy fear that you would have to give them something in return, or that finally you would have given them voluntarily if you possibly were converted by them to the unshakable faith in the one, only true God.

[11] But to prevent feeling obliged to give them something after a possible conversion, you did not want to be converted at all, and because of your greediness you did not want to receive a true

message about the one, only true God by means of a person that was enlightened by God.

[12] Now if this is so and not otherwise, then how can you find excuses in front of Me by saying that you were not able to heed your poor fellowman because in your lack of information about God you did not notice any obligation to them. In this manner you have, by your greediness, in the first case trampled on the right of nature, to which even all the better gentiles are conforming themselves, but in the second case, in which you make excuses before Me, you are a liar. So here you will receive the reward of greediness and that of a liar. And from now on, my chosen ones will just as little think about you as you have thought about an only true God in the material world, and as you have loved Him above all, as well as your fellowmen.'

[13] The seed for the true knowledge of God and the living faith in Him is in the first place the love for fellowman, and in that, also the pure love for God.

[14] However, if someone is already so heartless that he cannot even lovingly help his poor fellowman whom he can see, then how will he, in the hard blindness of his soul, be able to love God whom he impossibly can and want to see and be aware of?

[15] Look, in this way no unrepentant sinner can excuse himself later before Me, since it has been given from Me to everyone to come to know the truth and its goodness – for the gentile by the knowledge of the obvious things and circumstances in the great kingdom of nature, and for the Jew by way of extraordinary revelations.

[16] Therefore, I say to you once more: when you ask the Father in Me for something in My name, then ask Him most of all for the imperishable treasures of the Kingdom of God. Then you will receive them, and together with that, also what you need to live on this Earth.

[17] Let him, who received much earthly goods, manage them according to the will of the love of the Father. Then, being a loyal manager over small things, he will be appointed over great things

in My Kingdom.”

[18] After this rather long speech of Mine to the people from Joppe, they thanked Me very heartily, but not so much with outer gestures anymore. And with great love and humility the fisherman asked Me if they had to start already today on their way back home, since they were again completely healthy and strong men.

[19] And I said: “As far as I am concerned, you will not be forced to travel home or to stay longer here, but after the morning meal, at some opportunity, you surely can use it to travel home.”

[20] When the fisherman heard this, he was glad, for he had a burning desire to relate at home about all the things which he and his companions experienced here.

79. RAPHAEL WITH THE HERODIANS



ow also the Herodians came out of their dormitory and went to their ship to see if it was still in good shape and if it still could be used for navigation.

[2] However, before they properly could inspect the ship, **the captain** saw us from the pier standing together on a little elevation of the shore – about 200 paces away from them. And he said to the **chief**: “Friend, we will leave the inspection of the ship to our loyal soldiers. Also without us, they will be able to see how far the ship is still useable or not. But we will go to that group of people up there on the higher part of the shore, for I have the impression that the great Lord and Master is there. I very well remembered His garment yesterday, and also that of a beautiful young man. They must be the ones. So let us immediately go to them, for this is the most important thing. All the rest can be well taken care of later.”

[3] **The captain** hardly had said that when Raphael, whom he recognized from afar as the beautiful young man whom he saw the evening before, stood right before him and the chief. And they both were frightened of Raphael’s sudden presence, for they really could not understand how he could cover 200 paces in 1 moment

and come to them. They really became scared of him, so that they did not dare to ask him how he was able to come that quickly to them.

[4] **But he said to them (Raphael):** “Why are you afraid of me? I suppose I do not look frightening, and I also do not want to give you even the least of unpleasantness. And therefore, your fear for me is futile and foolish. Do you not see that?”

[5] **The captain said:** “O lovely young man, our fear for you, which can certainly be excused, is not as futile and foolish as you think, for if you had come to us in a few moments of time by running fast, then this would certainly not have been something surprising, since a young man in perfect health can just like a chased deer make quick jumps. But to be present there and here as a flash of lightning without any sound, this is clearly a little too much. I just have to consider now that for you and for your – and now also our – Lord and Master nothing is impossible. And then, your very quick arrival to this place is surely understandable for us. But first we would like to hear from you for which very important reason the great Lord and Master has sent you here to us as a flash of lightning.”

[6] **Raphael said:** “To bring you the message that you should not go directly to Him now. He Himself will come to you and tell you what you should do in the matter with Herod when you will be back in Jerusalem. And this, the Lord only wants to tell you, without any witnesses present.

[7] But also, as a servant of the Lord, I still have something else to do, which will also be immediately executed. Look, the bottom of your ship is seriously damaged by the hard crash against this shore of many stones. If it would not lay in the shallowest part of this lake, it already would have sunk. But since the lake is only a couple of ells¹ deep here, the ship cannot sink any deeper than that.

¹ Ell: a traditional unit of length. It varied considerably, but the German ell was always shorter than the English ell. A typical value in northern Germany was 2 fuss or 60 cm. In the south, the ell was usually longer, about 75 cm. In Vienna, the ell was eventually standardized at about 78 cm.

[8] Now look at your soldiers, how they shake their head with the other skippers, and deliberate with each other what should be done with your leaking ship. To scoop out the water will not help, for then the work would be as useless as when someone would scoop out a brook. Because quite as much and even much more water would again stream into the brook as he would scoop out. Now come very bravely with me and convince yourself that this is indeed the case with your ship.”

80. RAPHAEL REPAIRS THE DAMAGED SHIP



WHEN the chief, the captain and also the other leaders and guides who were subordinate to them, went with Raphael to the ship, and to their regret they saw that the ship was in the condition as Raphael had described to them before.

[2] Also **the 10 soldiers** who were of the same opinion as the other present skippers – mostly those of Kisjona – said to the chief: “Lord, and our commander, we probably will not be able to do anything with this ship for the next 8 to 10 days. First it has to be pulled on land and be examined by skillful carpenters, then be repaired and tested. Otherwise, it is not advisable to go during this time with this changeable weather on the ship in the open of these always restless waters.”

[3] **After the chief and the captain had convinced themselves of this, the captain** said to Raphael: “Lovely friend, you just said that you also came so quickly to us to bring that ship again in a for us useable condition. How can you do that while all these men are worryingly shaking their head? This ship can hardly be pulled on land with 20 oxen. And finally, where are the necessary carpenters?”

[4] **Raphael** said: “You look at everything according to your powerlessness, just like all other people. I however, see it according to the power of God in me. And that is why I truly will not need more time to bring that ship into a useable condition than I needed to come down from the Lord’s company to you. But do

not be as frightened this time as you were before because of my fast trip to you.

[5] Look, from the will of the Lord in me I want now that this ship will immediately be changed in an excellent useable condition. And look, your ship is already completely alright. Let your soldiers and also the other skippers step into it and check, then they will not discover the smallest fault, not on the inside, neither on the outside.”

[6] In the greatest amazement, the ship was examined on all sides, and nowhere could be discovered the smallest fault. Inside it was as dry as if never a drop of water had come inside the deck, and on the outside it looked like new and just timbered.

[7] **After the inspection, they all said:** “This is a miracle above all miracles. This is now a ship that you can also trust on the great sea.”

[8] **All the Herodians looked at the so-called young man with ever greater attention, and they did not know what they had to think of him.**

[9] **After a while, the chief said:** “And against such men Herod would like to battle? He, hardly a mosquito, against 1,000 lions.”

[10] **Then Raphael said:** “Yes, yes, you made a good and true remark there. Men who do not have a true, inner light of life, live in a wrong light and undertake very often things of which the execution is as impossible as if someone who from his birth is completely blind, can give his opinion about a color. But this does not prevent the many wrong people who want to accomplish – with every earthly means that are at their disposal – something that is completely impossible. And if their work does not succeed with their first attempt, then they still do not stop, but try again and again. And when they often accomplished as little as during their first attempt, then they do not shrink back to try again, just as long until they have reached their complete ruin by that.

[11] Now such often repeated failing attempts should be a good lesson for many other people. But no. They think, rage and act as madly as their forefathers who always perished, and thereby they

run to the old misfortune of their mad forefathers.

[12] But to the one who wants something himself, and who does not want to be learned by anyone, no injustice is ever done. His free will, given by God to him to bring himself to completion, is misused and throws man all too often into the abyss of misery and into the ruin of his forefathers. Out of many experiences, man knows for sure that he will go to ruin if he steps into the footsteps of his ancestors and continues to walk on their unreliable paths and selfish ways. But as said: the one who does not want to be learned from the truth, is to blame himself for his inevitable downfall.

[13] As it happened to all evil fools before, so it will also soon happen to Herod, partly already in this life, and many thousands of times worse in the great world on the other side forever.

[14] I can assure you this, since I very well know the beyond, and this for the very easy understandable reason that I myself am a citizen of that great world of the beyond for already a long time. That I walk around here visibly among the people, being active, and teaching them in the name of the Lord with words and deeds, is a great mercy of the Lord, who now He Himself walks around as a human being among the people, who teaches them and shows them everywhere the great errors in which they live. Now you also know who I am now. Therefore, you should not be too surprised about my deeds, which you can of course not understand.”

81. THE LORD WITH THE HERODIANS



AFTER Raphael had said that to the chief, he and his companions were even more amazed. And after a while he said somewhat shyly (**the chief**): “What? Thus you are a spirit from the world in the beyond? We now and then heard about spirits and fairylike things, and also in the Scripture they are mentioned several times, but I myself, and with me certainly many thousand times thousand of people, hardly believed in this anymore, and also did not believe it for already a long time, since no one of us can boast to have seen or spoken to a spirit.

[2] Although magicians came to us, partly from the morning land and partly from Egypt, who, besides their profession as a magician and their many deceitful arts, practiced also the conjuring of spirits, and they always put certain very horrifying figures before the eyes of the people. But it was known all too soon who was behind those appearances. Therefore, such magical conjuring of spirits did unspeakably more harm than good to the belief in an existence of spirits in the beyond, especially with the more educated and experienced people.

[3] The common people who do not understand or reason – for they never received nor could receive an explanation from anyone concerning these deceits of the profit-greedy magicians – still believe of course that there are people to whom power is given to conjure spirits from the beyond. But we always considered that belief as complete foolishness, although we willingly tolerated it among the people, and are still tolerating it for very understandable reasons.

[4] But now you, a truly great and powerful spirit from the great world in the beyond, have changed our mind, and from now on we will completely and without any doubt believe in the existence of spirits and also in the possibility that they can become visible before the eyes of men. That you are not a natural human being like us, was clear from your coming to us as a flash of lightning, and then still more from the very sudden restoration of our very damaged ship, and because you yourself told us now openly and honestly who you are, we believe now more firmly that you are really a perfect spirit from the great heavenly world in the beyond.

[5] But you also said that you are a citizen of the great world in the beyond for already a long time. Can we therefore assume that you also once lived as a human being of flesh and blood on this Earth?"

[6] **Raphael said:** "Very sure, but still a long time before Noah. My name was Enoch. You do not have to know more for the moment. But now the Lord Himself is coming with Marcus, the present owner of this bath resort. Do what the Lord will tell

you. I will return now to the Lord's company.”

[7] When Raphael had said that, he was already with the group above, about which the chief and his companions were again very amazed.

[8] **The captain said:** “Yes, friends, this is a very clear proof that this extremely lovely young man is a real, perfect angel spirit, for only perfect spirits can move as fast as thoughts. But now the Lord is already very close to us, and we should receive Him with the greatest possible reverence.”

[9] When immediately after that, I walked with a friendly face to them, they all laid their hands crossed on their chest and kneeled down.

[10] But I immediately spoke the following very kind words to them: “Children, and now friends, stand up quickly from the ground, for I am no idol and do not desire any outer worship by gestures. I have seen in your heart that it is very pleasing to Me now, and I do not need more.”

[11] When I spoke to them in this way, they all stood up quickly from the ground and thanked Me for having saved their life and for the mercy, love and great friendship which they had received here instead of a deserved punishment. But at the same time, they also asked Me for complete forgiveness of the sin they had to commit against Me.

[12] I said to them: “Stay with your intention, acknowledge the only Lord and Master in Me, and love God above all with deeds by loving your fellowmen as yourself, and by being righteous towards everyone. Then by that, all your sins will be forgiven.

[13] If you committed an injustice to someone through your impulsions, then make up for it, as much as this is possible. And if it is no more possible, then instead of that, do good to other poor people, then you will gather treasures for the future life in My eternal Kingdom of Heaven.

[14] This consists very briefly of My teaching for you people. And that covers Moses and all the prophets. If you actively will heed those, then you also will be My true disciples, and then from the

power of My love I will take up residence in your hearts, lead you into all wisdom and give you the eternal life, for only I can do that, because I Myself am the Light, the Way and the Life.

[15] I am the Light of the Love of the Father in Me. As Love is Life itself, so also is the Light exactly that same and one Life. So he who believes from Me that I as a real Son or Light come always from the Father who is Love, will certainly also believe in the eternal, holy Father who sent Me as a true, living Light into this world, so that all who believe in Me will have the eternal life in them.

[16] So believe that I, as the Light and Life, am the true Son of the eternal Father who made everything – the Heaven and this Earth and everything that is in Heaven and Earth and the whole of infinity – and live and act always according to My teaching. Thus love God above all and your fellowman as yourself, then you will have by that the eternal life in you. And even if you will once die what concerns your body, then your soul will still continue to live in the most clear and fullest awareness, and will eternally never see, feel or taste death.

[17] If you have understood this, then take up the unbendable resolution in your heart to be and to stay active according to these My words.”

82. THE GUESTS LEAVE TO THEIR HOMES



N this, the chief said: “O Lord and Master, all of us will do that, because we all are all too clearly and thoroughly convinced now who the One is who spoke to us, as no other man has ever spoken to his fellowmen. You alone are really the Lord Himself and also will remain eternally.

[2] But now, o Lord, mercifully allow me to ask You what we should do with Herod. Is it right and pleasing to You what we intend to do with him for the well being of the so many poor and needy people whom he very often excessively suppressed in an extremely unmerciful way by his servants of justice and

unscrupulous soldiers that are of the same kind than those who were drowned on the ships yesterday?”

[3] **I** said: “That which is rightful, is also good. But if you undertake something against that sly fox, then be very careful and plan everything well in My name. Refrain from every passion and anger, and calculate every step very wisely, so that no one would block your way and you would then with your good intention without effect be placed on the background.

[4] If you will act in My name and according to My advice, you will easily be able to drive that fox in a corner, and then he will have to give in to your justified demand. So make this matter only known after you have prepared everything in such a way that the fox can no more escape from the trap that was set for him, for a fox has very good ears, and one should very softly and noiselessly crawl to his hole in order to successfully set there a trap for him.

[5] Thus, make also no sensation of Me and My works, and do not reveal Myself to that fox any further than is the case now, but tell him what happened to you as a result of your blind zeal. Tell him that you found Me on Roman protected territory where you firstly according to the law and secondly as a result of your little strength, caused by the storm, were not allowed to, nor could undertake anything against Me. And of this, My friend Marcus here and still many other witnesses will give you a valid testimony. And tell him also another thing, namely about the Tiberians to who he surely will then pay the damage that was caused. Do not show him any further plans against him.

[6] And now something else. Some poor and sick people from Joppe came here for the sake of their healing and were also totally healed. After taking the morning meal, take them on your ship that is now completely alright and bring them to Tiberias. From there they will then go home. From these men from Joppe you will hear many things about Me which you could not come to know here. That will greatly strengthen your heart, your faith and your love for Me.

[7] In Tiberias you also can give them the necessary traveling

money from your abundance, which will not be left unrewarded. Do the things I have told you now.

[8] And now we will go to the morning meal. In your dormitory you will find the morning meal that is already prepared for you, the weapons that were taken from you yesterday and the clearly written testimonies for Herod. And with that we will leave each other in all peace, all friendship and love.”

[9] After these words of Mine, the Herodians thanked Me really from the deepest of their heart, asked Me also not to ever leave them with My mercy and love, and went then immediately to their dormitory.

[10] However, Me and our Marcus went to our house, and all My disciples and all those present did the same when they saw us going to the house. We went immediately to sit at our tables and took the well-prepared morning meal, and so also the men from Joppe in their already known corner.

[11] After the morning meal, **Marcus** asked Me: “Lord and Master, who actually wrote those testimonies for the Herodians in such an incredible short time?”

[12] **I** said, pointing to Raphael: “Do you then not know My fast writer?”

[13] **Marcus** said: “Yes, so it is. Then the matter is of course quickly solved about which I was really a bit worried because I write very badly. So I am very glad that this was done so well. But now, I suppose that the men from Joppe should be made clear what they have to do?”

[14] **I** said: “Also that is not necessary, for My Raphael already informed them what they should do after the morning meal according to their wish. They are already standing up from their table and will soon be with the Herodians.”

[15] When **Marcus** saw the men from Joppe standing up from their table and saw them immediately standing at the door without any outer visible form of goodbye and without a loudly spoken word of thanks, he said: “It is certainly somewhat strange of these men that they leave us so indifferently.”

[16] **I** said: “Did you then not hear the lesson that I gave to them outside on the shore concerning the expression of gratitude by means of gestures and about praying and asking with the lips, and what its consequences are?”

[17] What they did now was very right in My eyes, and you should not be confused about their only apparent indifference regarding us, because they said goodbye to us in their heart with all the more respect and did not bother us.”

[18] When Marcus heard this from Me, he also agreed on everything.

[19] Now also all the others who were present came to Me and asked Me if they also had to go home.

[20] **I** said: “Except from Kisjona, Philopold and the Roman judge, you all can go home. They should truthfully report to their friends at home of all the things they have heard and seen here, and spread My Kingdom in this manner among the people. There is no lack of possibilities to travel from here into all directions. However, I Myself will still stay here for several days and give Myself some rest.”

[21] As soon as I finished my speech, came the doctor, the other healed Greeks, the innkeeper from Jesaira, the known fisherman who lived in his neighborhood, and some fishermen from the bay of reeds, who were cynics before and who traveled along with them to this place. And they thanked for all the physical and spiritual things they had received and enjoyed, and left then to their homes. One group traveled on land to the west, the others were further transported on the water. But we still stayed here for 1 hour in the house and talked to each other about many useful, good and true things.

83. THE SUGGESTION OF THE ROMAN TO SPREAD THE LORD'S TEACHING AS FAST AS POSSIBLE



WHEN we went outside again, to the shore where we were in the morning.

[2] After staying there for a while without exchanging words, **the Roman** came to Me and said: “One and only true Lord and Master, full of the purest love and wisdom and godly power, a special thought came into my mind now. There is no greater bliss, happiness, and thus also desire for the people on this Earth than to spread Your teaching with its living, wonderful power among them, and this in the shortest possible time. And according to me, this would be not too difficult.

[3] Look, You are almighty. One thought from You, filled with the almightiness of Your will, and there will be no more temple of idols and no more images of idols. If these most important pillars of the old, dark and evil superstition are done away with, and as fast as lightning on all places of the Earth at once, that will certainly frighten the people and they will soon begin to think about how and why that happened and about its meaning.

[4] Then the many who are well and truly knowledgeable about You and Your Kingdom should go to the people who are on the one hand frightened and on the other hand surprised and who ask for the reason of the phenomenon, and teach them in Your name. And wherever they meet sick people, they should heal them in the same manner as the already send out disciples have healed the sick men in Joppe who are present here now. And I think that, in this exceptional manner, Your teaching will be spread the fastest and surest way to all men. Men cannot accomplish that because they do not have the means for it, but You have the means with which a very great work can be quickly accomplished. Would that not be possible, or would it be contrary to Your wisdom and order?”

[5] **I** said: “Yes friend, if I only would be a man and would think and reason your way, that would seem a good idea, but as the eternal Master of all existence and life, I see and reason quite

differently than you. Therefore, I cannot accept your advice.

[6] If I would destroy at once all the temples that are built by men, I firstly will have to completely wipe away their priests from the face of the Earth. But priests are also human beings, endowed with a free will and destined to develop themselves and to establish the spiritual life in them. Among the pagan priests there are also a great number who personally search in secret already for a long time for the truth of the life of the soul in the beyond. Therefore, it would be inappropriate to destroy them just because they are pagan priests.

[7] Now if all pagan temples would be destroyed at once, together with their idols, and the priests would remain, then they would explain such phenomenon to the people as the wrath of the gods, and they very soon would force them to pay unaffordable and cruel offerings. In many places the priests are doing this already now anyway when the people do not offer as much as before, by destroying one or the other temple at night, and loudly proclaiming the wrath and vengeance of an insulted god to the people, after which the people become even more dark, superstitious, and more difficult to convert.

[8] Besides, miracles and all kinds of signs are not the right, true means to convert, especially for a people who are still too little awakened in the spirit. They easily take away the freedom of man and force them with irresistible force to believe without doubt what is presented to them to believe. However, in this time there are, especially among the priests, all kinds of magicians – like they existed in former times and also will exist in the future – who perform all kinds of false wonders and signs. But from where will the people have the insight and the clear ability of reason to distinguish between the false wonders and signs from the real and true ones?

[9] If I would give you the capability to perform real, true signs among the gentiles, but the pagan priests would perform, just like the former Essenes, false signs before you that look just alike, then how will you then prove to the blind people that only your signs

are the real ones?”

[10] **The Roman said:** “Yes, yes, Lord and Master, You are completely right. Only by the light truth can the people in time come to the true, inner freedom of life.

[11] In order to prove Your divinity it is from Your side certainly necessary to perform signs and wonders for us blind gentiles, which cannot be done by any human being, at least if we can recognize the old skills of the magicians. And so You are entitled to perform, besides Your teaching – which is already a great wonder in itself – also other signs and wonders so that we more clearly can see that Your words are not human, but divine. But when Your teaching will be proclaimed and taught by Your disciples to the other people, just as You taught Your disciples, it will also be accepted as the purest, living truth from the Heavens, and it will be understood and actively observed. And the greatest wonder will be performed by the teaching itself because the people who will faithfully act accordingly will reach in them what is promised by it. But it will of course take a long time before this holy teaching will genuinely reach all people on Earth. But You are the Lord and know best where, how and when a people is ripe for Your teaching.”

[12] **I said:** “Yes, friend, this is how it is. And now I have given you a more correct idea than before with your immediate destruction of all idols and their temples.”

84. THE RIGHT WAY TO SPREAD THE KINGDOM OF GOD FOR THE SPIRITUAL DEVELOPMENT OF MAN



F you put a grain of seed into the soil it still will need time to germinate and to gradually develop into a completely ripe fruit. This is of course a matter of patience for a farmer if he, after sowing and until the harvest, he has to wait almost half a year. He certainly would also prefer to sow today and already reap tomorrow. And look, as with God all things are possible, God can also easily accomplish that, but then the spiritual development of

man would be in a much worse state than it is now. Man, who is eager for profit, would continually sow and reap, but the lazy one would sink deeper into an ever greater laziness. This is obvious and easy to understand. Therefore, the order in all things on this Earth as determined by God is for the spiritual development of man still the best and the most efficient.

2] That which from time to time has to exist quickly does really not need half a year from its initial beginning of its existence until the full, actual result, like for instance the wind, lightning, rain and still all kinds of similar phenomena that, if necessary, must also happen directly according to God's will. But other things in which men have to be involved need just like with man, their own time. And this is also the case with the spreading of My teaching, which exclusively is only brought and given by Me for the people in this world, in this time and also in the future."

[3] **Then the Roman said:** "O Lord and Master, I perceive now very clearly that on this Earth, for the sake of men, everything must be and must exist as it is and as it exists now. But when I think that man can only acquire the true, eternal life of his soul by having faith in You and by acting according to Your teaching, and that for this reason billions of people, who will hear nothing about You and Your teaching for a very long time, will certainly suffer damage to their soul, then I become afraid. And only from that point of view I desired that Your teaching should be spread as fast as possible."

[4] **I said:** "Such desire is in itself a real and true honor for your heart and is a true joy for My heart. It is true that only I am the door to the eternal life of the soul of every person. The one who believes in Me and who lives and acts according to My teaching will receive the eternal life.

[5] Yesterday on the mountain you have seen the soul of your father and the souls of different people that you know, and you even talked to them. And you also have seen the useless existence of a lot of souls in the beyond. I say to you: that the gospel is also preached to them by My numberless angels. Those who will listen

to it, accept it and conform themselves to it, will also attain to the bliss, but not as easy and quickly as on this Earth where man has oftentimes many very difficult battles to fight against the world, against his flesh and against still a lot of other things – even if that is only for a short time – and by which he learns all possible patience, self-denial, meekness and humility.

[6] Therefore, do not worry too much for anyone in the great world in the beyond, for God’s love, wisdom and great mercy rule everywhere, also in the great world in the beyond. Those who will grab these and comply with it and conform themselves to them will not be lost. But those who will not do that here, neither in the beyond, to him applies the rule that to the one who wants himself the evil that harms him, no injustice is done. Are you, friend, satisfied with this very clear explanation of Mine?”

[7] **The Roman** said: “Yes, Lord and Master, with this explanation I am now completely satisfied, for they satisfy all demands of a person’s reasonable mind, and it is fully a true comfort for our souls. Therefore, all love, honor and praise are due to You, now and in all eternity.”

[8] **Our Roman** was completely satisfied with this, and after that he only asked Me few questions of that kind.

85. THE HEALED ROMAN JUDGE CONVERTS HIS FRIENDS



SENE of Marcus’ servants came to us with a message for the Roman from his several friends in the big bath and cure resort. They were concerned and took information about him, because according to them he stayed too long outside of the bath resort, since they thought that he was not yet healed.

[2] Upon this, the Roman asked Me what he had to do now, for he did not want to make Me known to the other guests in the cure resort.

[3] But I said to him: “You can talk in confidence with your friends about Me, and tell them how you were physically healed.

[4] If they will believe, then they also will improve, but if they will

not believe completely, they will not improve. If they personally want to see Me and speak to Me, then try to dissuade them, in which the servant of Marcus will support you. If despite that, they still want to speak to Me, then let them come here, but do not tell them anything where the Jews, Pharisees and other priests are present.

[5] Now you can go with the servant to the cure resort, so that your long absence will not attract too much attention.”

[6] After these words of Mine, the Roman stood up and went with the servant to the cure resort.

[7] Arriving there, his friends and acquaintances saw him immediately, ran to him and assailed him with a thousand questions.

[8] **But he (the healed Roman) said:** “Just give me some time, and look at me first a little more attentively, and tell me then what you think of me.”

[9] **Then they all looked at him very attentively, and a Roman, who also came from Tyre, said:** “But by Zeus, you look perfectly healthy. How were you healed outside while you health condition yesterday could in no way expect such fast and complete healing?

[10] Did you perhaps find a better doctor in Marcus’ house than the 3 doctors of the cure resort, or *did you find* a new healing spring that was maybe kept secret until now? Tell us in detail, so that we also can go outside and be healed just like you.”

[11] **Then the Roman told them everything he had heard, seen and experienced.**

[12] **When his friends heard all that, they shrugged their shoulders, and one of them said:** “Friend, these are things that are almost more difficult to believe than our mythical idolism.

[13] I heard already many things from the mouth of trustworthy witnesses about the exceptional deeds and works of your new God, who however is born, just like we all, from a woman and who is a man from flesh and blood, and who will die, just like we. But the old conviction that I received from the books about all those many great, famous men was confirmed again – also concerning this

God-Man of yours.

[14] Deifying a great man, who is famous in one or the other field, is so very old that its origin cannot be determined anymore. And it became already an old proverb among us that there can be no great, famous man without God having breathed upon him. And this is certainly exactly the same for your new God of whom they said that He is a Galilean.

[15] He is a Man with undoubtedly exceptional talents and powers which He developed in one or the other ancient famous school, and now He performs fabulous things which are miraculous to us laymen, and all honor is due to Him for that. But if for this reason He represents Himself before us human beings as a God, just like the sages from the ancient times, is a vain matter. No one with a natural sound reasoning will ever completely accept this. I very gladly would like to let myself be healed by Him and give Him also the reward that He desires for that, but to immediately accept and honor Him as the one, only true God for that healing, that, friend, cannot penetrate in me, despite His teaching which is truly very pure.

[16] If someone can believe what you told us here about Him, *accepting it* as a certain truth, good, let him believe it and live and die as happy as possible in his faith. As far as I am concerned I probably will never share that happiness with him.”

[17] **The Roman judge said:** “You all are, just like me, men who are awake and with much experience, and thus you could be more open to the truth of all truths than you are now.

[18] There are people everywhere who believe in one or also several divine beings, but no one can claim to have ever seen such divine being at work among the people, or personally experienced in an undecieved manner what I have experienced here.

[19] If you cannot believe from me now that such a man, to whom all powers and elements obey and whom the geniuses from the Heavens miraculously serve, is a God and must also infallibly be, then it is only now that I understand how difficult it will be for His pure divine teaching to be accepted by the people of the Earth.

[20] Have you perhaps ever seen a more real God, so that you can say now that He – of whom I told you in details about all the things He Himself is saying and doing – is not a real God? In short, you may believe now whatever you want, but I will stay with my belief for my whole life. And through this, I will receive the eternal life of my soul all the more truly because I feel it now deeply in myself and will feel it even more clearly in myself in the future.

[21] Who will and can be a true God first: an invented god about whom unfortunately we have numerous ones who are all dead and about whom we men never experienced any miraculous action, or a living Man for whose almighty word and will all the powers of the Heavens and this Earth are bowing in total obedience?

[22] I think *that the one is God* of who was prophesied by all Jewish sages that are not unknown to us, *saying* that He would come as the Lord in flesh and blood in this time to the people, and give them back what they have lost because of their laziness, love for the world and lust for power.

[23] And now this God-Man is here, and He teaches and works completely according to the old promises. Why actually would I, just to please you, not believe the greatest salvation of my life, which you cannot believe for very shallow reasons? I truly pity everyone whose eyes of faith cannot be opened now.”

[24] *After these words of the judge, the others did not know what to reply, for he was enlightened by Me in his heart and always presented to them the most convincing evidence to the contrary.*

[25] *Only on the 3rd day he succeeded to make them believe, after which he then took them at noon to Me, and I also healed them. Then they were filled with faith, and they praised the efforts of the judge that he brought them also to the greatest salvation of life. The whole 4th day they and the judge stayed with Me and let themselves be instructed in everything, by which our Raphael was again very busy.*

[26] *The 5th day they traveled in the morning after the morning meal full of gratitude and faith and with a complete healthy body back to their families – some of them to Tyre and others to Sidon.*

86. RAPHAEL SAVES PERSIANS AND INDIANS



URING those 5 days that I spent with Marcus, together with the now known and completely converted Romans, nothing of importance happened. We made small trips nearby, at some places I healed a few sick people, and on the 2nd day Marcus went on My word on a fishing trip and caught a lot of fish.

[2] On the early morning of the 6th day a ship neared the bath resort. As usual, before the morning meal we were together on the shore of the lake and watched the various morning scenes and appearances. Raphael explained these to the disciples and to Kisjona and Philopold who were still present, and they all, except Judas Iscariot, experienced very great joy on that.

[3] The ship that came close to the shore had Persians and even a few Indians on board, and it really fought against the high waves. The skippers were Gadarenes and knew that our shore was full of reefs. That is why they navigated to and fro 200 paces from the shore to see where and how they could come close to the shore with less danger. But because the rather heavy morning wind did not lie down, the skippers signaled to the shore that they were in danger and needed help.

[4] Now Marcus asked Me what could be done, if for one or the other reason I did not want to perform a miracle.

[5] I said: “These Persians and Indians with their animals and magician equipment can still experience some fright by the waves until we will have finished the morning meal. When we will then come back to the shore, it will become clear how the ship can be helped.”

[6] Marcus was satisfied with that, and then we went directly home, to the well-prepared morning meal.

[7] After 1 hour we all went back to the shore and saw the ship in the same need and trouble. Only now I gave a sign to Raphael to bring the ship to the shore. In order not to attract attention to the arrivals, he now climbed into a rowboat and rowed quickly to

the big ship.

[8] When he came there, **the skippers**, being very surprised about his courage, asked him: “What do you, weak boy, want to do here actually? Did you come to help us? This will not be of much use because you do not even have a rope or a hook in your boat. With what do you want to attach our strong, big ship to your light rowboat and help us then to bring it into save deep water to the shore?”

[9] **Raphael said with a strong voice**: “Just leave that to me. If you will entrust yourselves to me, then I can and will help you, but if you think that I am too weak for that, then let yourselves be helped by someone else in this strong surge!”

[10] **A skipper said**: “Then show us what you can do and how strong you are, and immediately, now that we ask you, or else we will soon perish.”

[11] Now Raphael took one of the protruding beams of the big ship and drew it with arrow speed to the shore. And since by doing this, but also by his will, as if pushing a great mass of water to the shore, the bottom of the ship did not touch the shallow ground, and thus did not suffer damage.

[12] The skippers and travelers were extremely amazed about the young man with such completely incomprehensible strength, and who dealt so playfully with the power of the elements as if he was dealing with a drop of dew that was hanging on a stalk of grass, and a very soft morning breeze instead of the water of the lake and the hard wind.

[13] When the skippers were now on the shore that was peaceful and safe, they praised the courage and the good will of the young man and especially his exceptional power and ability in using them, which was according to all of them really miraculous, and they asked him how much they had to pay him as a reward for that.

[14] **Raphael said**: “I personally do not need your reward. But if you meet someone who is still poorer than you yourselves mostly are, then show him love and mercy.”

[15] All this was astonishing to them, and even **the strangers** said: “Truly, this is a remarkable young man.”

[16] This event had caused a great scene, and all the servants of Marcus came to the shore to see what kind of great and unheard-of things had happened again.

[17] When it was explained to them in more detail, **they all** said: “Yes, yes, when Heaven and Earth will be united by the Lord, miracles are almost natural appearances, but once the Lord will return to behind all the stars, there will again be a great lack of such great and exceptional events among the people on Earth.”

[18] Then the travelers put their luggage on the shore, and they informed how they could continue their trip over land to the big sea. This was also explained to them, and on My sign our Raphael took it upon him to help them further on their way without betraying in the least that he was more than a normal human being. Nevertheless he told the travelers in Tyre in whose company they had been, *in the place* where he saved them in a miraculous way.

[19] When the travelers heard that, they wanted to return to know Me personally, and they offered Raphael large amounts of money for that. But then Raphael disappeared very suddenly from their sight and he was with us again.

87. THE LORD’S TRIP TO GENNESARET



T was now already the 8th day that I stayed resting with Marcus and My disciples. And Marcus and also the disciples asked Me why I had spent these days in almost complete rest, which they did not experience with Me before.

[2] I said: “We have worked now for almost 2 ½ years every day without interruption, and My teaching is already spread far and wide. Therefore, it was now also the time to take a real Sabbath’s rest here. And besides that, you received the time to write down many things.

[3] But from now on there will be no more rest. We really will come into the time of the great storms, and within hardly ½ year

the greatest storm will come. It will kill the Shepherd, and many sheep from His flock will be scattered into the world. And they will be persecuted from one end of the world to the other for the sake of My name. Only when this will happen you will entirely realize and come to know why I have rested here now for a few days.”

[4] These words of Mine brought them all in a sad mood, and also **Mary** said: “Lord, all power has been given to You, also over Satan. Let these storms not come upon Your head.”

[5] **I** said: “These are things that I alone can understand. Do not say anything about it anymore, because death and the judgment of the world and its matter must be conquered forever.”

[6] Then no one said anything anymore. And since I had said that after the midday meal at the table, Marcus wanted to give instruction to bring more wine to make Me more cheerful.

[7] But **I** said: “Friend, just leave it, we all have enough.

[8] However, let a good ship be prepared, for in 1 hour I have to go to Ebal¹ in Gennesaret. Whoever wants to accompany Me there is free to do so. My disciples can accompany Me, and also Kisjona should come with Me to Gennesaret, as well as Mary and Philopold.”

[9] After these words, they all stood on their feet, and already within 1 hour we navigated to Gennesaret. The trip over the Lake of Galilee lasted about 3 hours, and then we reached the rather big bay of Gennesaret, which we already know and which was also called ‘Lake of Gennesaret’.

[10] When we reached that bay, we saw Ebal’s fishermen who were just busy catching fish for our Ebal, but since the early morning they still did not catch many fish because of the rather strong surging water.

[11] When our ships came close to them, we held back a little, and I asked the fishermen if they already had made a rich catch.

[12] And they (**the fishermen**) said: “Friend, our work goes very

¹ An innkeeper in Gennesaret where the Lord went to before (II 103-154). Then the name was written ‘Ebahl’.

badly today. The lake was very restless for the last few days, and then our work goes always badly and is meager. The fish containers of our lord are already empty, and already now he has to bring fish from other places in order to somehow satisfy the always many guests. If ever you travel to Gennesaret, the service of fish will be very meager for you.”

[13] **I said: “Throw your nets one more time in the water, then you will be satisfied with the catch.”**

[14] **When I had said that to the fishermen, several of them recognized Me and said: “Hail to us, and all glory and honor to You! O Lord and Master, forgive us our blindness, for we should have recognized You at first sight, for You have already blessed our village a year ago with Your holy presence. Yes, on Your well-known almighty word we certainly will have a rich catch, and Ebal and his whole house will see right away who the great fishing Master is here.”**

[15] **Then they threw their nets into the lake and caught so many of the best fishes that they hardly could put them into their ships and rowboats.**

[16] **When they finished the work, there was a great rejoicing among them with which they praised Me, and they navigated before us to Gennesaret. Ebal waited there with his men on the shore for them, for he strongly hoped for a rich catch because he had many guests. And this morning he was all the more hoping for a rich catch because his daughter Jahra¹ had a clear dream in which she saw Me and My disciples and friends coming over the water, and because of that the fishermen would have a blessed catch.**

[17] **When after ½ hour the fishermen came to the shore of Gennesaret, and Ebal saw the rich catch they made, he immediately said with raised hands: “O my daughter, that pious soul had a true vision. This is a blessing of my Lord, of my God. All glory and all praise go to Him for that.”**

[18] **Then he asked the fishermen if they had perhaps seen Me**

¹ Jahra or Jarah. The spelling is sometimes different with Lorber.

nearby on a ship or somewhere on the shore.

[19] **The skippers** pointed immediately to the ships that were still at some distance on the lake and said: “Look, there He comes with His disciples and friends. Hail us and the whole village, for He visits us again.”

[20] When Ebal heard that, he called immediately his wife, his children and his old, loyal servants and instructed them to take care of the table. Furthermore he said that the new dining hall should be well prepared for Me and for those who came with Me, and that only those could come there whom I would chose.

[21] On these instructions of Ebal they all left quickly and went to work to execute what he had commanded. However, he himself, together with Jarah, stepped into a little ship and navigated to meet Me. When he and Jarah saw Me from afar and next to Me My mother Mary whom they already knew, and Raphael, Kisjonah, Philopold, John, Peter, James and the old Marcus who also escorted Me to Gennesaret, they raised their hands with exceeding joy and greeted us very kindly with the usual signs. When they were close to us, there was no end to the loving greetings. Ebal and Jarah stepped both into the ship to be with us and told the skippers to navigate their ship back.

[22] A lot of things were asked, and I Myself told Ebal briefly about the most important moments of My activities after the time when I left Marcus the first time, and he and Jarah greatly rejoiced about that.

[23] While we were talking, we reached the shore of Gennesaret and came to the fishermen who were still very busy to put their fishes in the fish containers.

[24] Only now **Ebal** said to Me: “O Lord, forgive me, since I was truly drunk from joy I almost completely forgot to directly, openly and loudly thank You for the great gift of the fishes of which I was already in great need.”

[25] **I** said: “Friend Ebal, just leave that, for you surely know at what I am looking and to what I am listening with man, and there is nothing else that is needed between us. So be very cheerful and

remain from now on as you have been until now, then you will from now on rejoice in My love, mercy and friendship. But let us go now to the new dining hall where we will continue our discussion.”

88. THE MEAL WITH EBAL



Went to the hall, and all were surprised about the size, the beauty, the cleanness and the comfort of the building that was build by a Greek master builder. Then we went to sit at the big table where easily about 100 guests could take place, and Ebal instructed immediately to let bring a right quantity of bread and wine, so that we could take a small meal before the actual main meal would be ready, which also did not take long. At the request of Ebal we took some bread and wine, and soon it became lively in the hall.

[2] Our Jarah, who could again hardly leave Me, spoke now with mother Mary and with Raphael. She asked a lot of things to him that she had seen and heard in her dreams, and he explained it very kindly to her. And Mary was very surprised about the wisdom of Jarah and cherished her dearly. And Ebal, who sat at My right, informed about the names of some of the disciples whom he did not know, which I also told him.

[3] After spending a little hour together in a very friendly way, the other children and servants brought already the excellently prepared meal, which we partook immediately.

[4] When the children and servants of Ebal put all the food on the table, they came to Me and greeted Me heartily and thanked Me that I had shown once more the love to visit them personally. I put My hands upon them and strengthened them, for which they thanked Me again and continued their work, because this time they had many foreign guests to serve who stayed here also for their health, for since My first stay here the formerly unhealthy place Gennesaret was changed into a cure resort, especially the pasture that was blessed by Me.

[5] When we had finished the good midday meal after more than 1 hour, Ebal asked Me what I would do in the afternoon.

[6] **I** said: “My friend, soon there will be a tremendous work before us which will keep us very busy till the falling of the night. You yourself will glorify Me greatly for that accomplished work. But let us now still rest for a while in the dining hall, for this time we should not have to look up the work that awaits us. It will find us soon enough.”

[7] Then we all still rested at the table for about ½ hour, and the disciples were wondering among each other as to what would come next, which the Lord Himself called ‘a tremendous work till the falling of the night’. Some thought that probably annoying Pharisees would come up again, or that maybe sent-out Herodians were again spying on him or on John’s disciples who were also, as it was said, a thorn in the eye of the lustful fox.

[8] When the disciples were still wondering among themselves about what kind of tremendous work it would be which I had announced and of what it would consist, a very anxious looking servant came hastily into the hall.

[9] **Ebal**, who of course knew the servant very well and whose anxious looking face he immediately noticed, stood quickly up, walked to him and said: “Benjamin, my old, loyal servant, what kind of bad news are you bringing me? For I cannot read anything that is good in your restless eyes.”

[10] **The servant** said: “Ebal, my lord and commander, I do not have the impression that something bad is coming up, but it will not be very pleasant, neither for you nor for the present guests. You surely know the new Roman captain who was transferred only a few weeks ago from near Bethlehem to this place. So he is a new broom here, and in order to increase his reputation he really wants to clean up. Through his all-seeing spies and observant watchmen he heard about the arrival of this eminent group and he thinks that he had to be immediately informed about all those who arrived here, from where they came, why and to where they will continue their trip, and if everyone can legitimize himself personally or one

person for all the others.

[11] Well this report was not done this time because of the great, general happiness about the coming of the Savior whose arrival we all greatly desired for already a long time, and that is why with the proud Romans all their devils broke loose at once. He is waiting for you outside and wants to speak to you.”

[12] **When Ebal heard that from the mouth of the old servant Benjamin, he really was irritated and said:** “No, it is really strange in this world that even for the most honest and submissive people there can never be a complete happy day on which such really evil worldly demon wants to embitter their life that is already filled with worries.”

[13] **I said:** “Friend, let go your irritation about this. If this world would not be a trial place of life ordained by God, where every human being should continually exercise himself, in all patience, meekness, humility and love unto his complete spiritual rebirth by extreme self-denial, then I Myself would not have come to you to precede you with the best and most life-real example. If the people of this Earth want to become children of God forever, in the manner of Raphael whom you know well and whose example you can follow, then in this only short lasting trial life they should also accept – with all patience and dedication to the will of the all-wise Father – the means which are determined by God to reach this highest goal of life.

[14] **Therefore, go outside and negotiate with the Roman captain, so that you would be the first to be convinced of the tremendous work that is ahead of us today till the falling of the night.”**

[15] **Ebal said:** “In Your name, o Lord and Master. I will immediately see what will come of it.”

[16] **Then he quickly went outside to the captain who was waiting for him with already great Roman impatience with several of his subordinates.**

89. THE ROMAN CAPTAIN AND HIS SOLDIERS DISTURB THE MEAL



WHEN Ebal stood before the captain, at once he raged at him with angry glowing eyes as follows (**the captain**):

“Is this your manner to obey my orders here, and do you still not know what the one can expect who does not obey the laws of Rome? Why did you this time neglect to immediately report to me about the arrival of a considerable number of strangers, so that I could have checked by these my servants whether those who arrived can and may be accommodated here for a certain time.”

[2] **Ebal said on this:** “Stern lord and commander, since you applied your laws here with a strictness that we, inhabitants of this city, are not used to, I never received a rebuke from you for not having obeyed your will. Also this time I did not act out of bad will against your ever difficult to bear regulations in neglecting to report to you of the arrival of the people who are no strange guests but who are my since long known honest best friends. It was only because of my great joy about their arrival that I forgot to fulfill my duty of which I am fully aware now. And I think that my request to you will not be in vain when I ask, for this one time, for your merciful indulgence.”

[3] **The captain said:** “The law knows no mercy and no indulgence. You broke my law – either because you forgot it or out of bad will, which is the same to me – and therefore you simply have to be punished. Exclusively because you are an eminent and prestigious citizen of this city I will not convert the punishment into a physical sentence but into a sentence of a considerable amount of money. And if you will not comply with my just demand, I will imprison your children as hostages and you will not have them back again until you will have paid the demanded amount up to the last cent. The punishment is 1,000 pound of gold and 10,000 pound of silver, and must be paid to me within 3 hours. Now you know what you have to do, and I am ready with you now. And now I will perform my duties on your arrived guests. So bring

me immediately to your new hall.”

[4] Ebal became very discouraged because of the merciless and unreasonable monetary punishment of which he by far did not possess the demanded amount, but at the same time he intensely trusted on Me. He trusted that I would certainly help him. And in this trust he brought the captain and his dark assistants immediately to us in the hall, of which the captain let also the outside be well guarded by his soldiers.

[5] We still were sitting very cheerfully at the big table when **the Roman** walked into the hall with a truly authoritative face, glowing from anger and with great rudeness and arrogance he asked immediately very fiercely to us: “Is every one of you his own lord or is there one lord for everyone, as this is often the case with travelers?”

[6] **I** said: “I am the true, only Lord for everyone. What else do you want from us, except from the inhuman sentence of amount of money which you spoke out against our dear friend Ebal but which is not grounded on any Roman law? Do you perhaps also intend to demand the same punishments from us?”

[7] **The captain** said: “Those over whom You are Lord are free from punishment, but You, who seem to have little respect for me, since You made a reproach against my measurement of sentence, will within 3 hours hand over the same amount of money which You find too inhuman for Your friend Ebal and of which You think that it is not grounded on any Roman law. I really will show you Jews and let understand that the laws of Rome are indeed grounded. I have said, and you know what you have to do.”

[8] **I** said: “But what if we firstly cannot satisfy your very unjust demand, and secondly will also not satisfy it? For where is it written that a Roman captain has the unconditional right to commit extortions in a friendly country in the same manner as in hostile countries?”

[9] Just show me your authorization which comes from the emperor himself or from his supreme governor Cyrenius. If you do not have such authorization you will have to deal with someone

who carries before your eyes the supreme authorization in Himself. And if I would not have it, I would not speak to you like that.

[10] You are here now as a proud, hard and almost unbearable commander, but there are still others who stand above you, and those whom you are suppressing very inhumanly will certainly be more justified by them than you. So show Me your instructions from the emperor himself or from the supreme governor, otherwise I will show you My authority.”

[11] These serious words of Mine made the captain startled, and after having thought about it for a while he said (**the captain**): “A written authorization I do not have, because a Roman captain in my position does not need any. But everyone stands under the oath of loyalty to the emperor and the exclusive welfare of Rome. If I bear those 2 points in mind, no one can call my severity to account. But do You have Your supreme authority?”

[12] **I** said: “Do not desire to know it beforehand.”

[13] **The captain** said: “Do You perhaps think that a Roman is a fearful hare who will immediately run for a sly Jewish fox? O no, a Roman is like a lion who will chase all animals without any fear or fright.”

[14] On this, he gave one of his servants a sign, and he opened the door by which immediately about 30 soldiers ran in who were armed to the teeth.

[15] When these positioned themselves in a certain order around our table, **the captain** said with a very dominating voice: “Look, specially authorized Jew, this is my effective authority which will imprison you as long as you will not comply with my demands. Do You know this kind of authority?”

[16] **I** said: “Yes, My proud, very blind Roman, together with your assistants and soldiers, this kind of your authority I know already for a long time, but this time it will not be of any use to you, for since you have now shown Me the full sharpness of your teeth, I will show you also My complete authority, but only as much as a sun’s particle of it. Then it will be completely clear to you that you are not My lord, but that only I am and will forever be your Lord.

[17] Look, the space of this hall is high and wide. The ceiling is largely 7 man's height high, and is about 20 long and 12 wide. Now I want, with My complete inner authority, that you will float with your sharp weapons halfway this hall freely into the air. And then you will see how useful your sharp and lion-like authority will be. And until you will completely give up your unjust demand to Ebal and Me, your foot will not touch the firm ground. Now let it be as I said."

90. A WONDER OF THE LORD DISILLUSIONS THE ROMAN



WHEN I had said that, they all floated on the predetermined height in the air of the hall. And since every one of them lost every point of support, and lost therefore also their balance, most of them hung upside down in the air because of their strong sprawling movements. And a wind that swirled in the hall through the high windows of the hall drove them from one wall of the hall to the other, and neither one of them could help the other. Some tried to throw their weapons at us but also these got stuck in the air.

[2] When the captain and his assistants had been in that unprecedented position for almost ½ hour, I asked him: "What do you think now of My complete authority? Do you not think that the lion of Judah is more powerful than your sharp Roman authority, which you also called a lion that chases all animals and which is not like a hare that will immediately run for a sly Jewish fox?"

[3] On this, **the captain** shouted from the air at Me: "I beg You, head of all magicians or half or complete God, free us from this extremely unbearable condition, then I will completely give up the spoken out punishment, for I see now very clearly that all power of even the greatest empire on Earth cannot compete with You. Free me from this pitiful condition, then I not only will completely remit the punishment which I imposed on *both of you*, but I

also will no more interfere with you in the least and keep silent about this matter as an Egyptian pyramid, and you can all stay in this city as long as you want and I will force none of you to leave this place.”

[4] **I said:** “Listen, I can see through your heart and see that you still are not completely serious with your promises, but since I certainly know My power better than you know yours, I will hear your request. And so the earth’s surface will again be a fixed point of support for your feet.”

[5] When I had said that, they all stood upright in the air and descended very calmly to the earth’s surface again which was the floor of the hall.

[6] When they were on solid ground again, the captain sent his soldiers immediately away and commanded also the guards who stood outside of the hall to return to their habitations and encampments, which also happened immediately. But he himself stayed with 2 of his highest secondary leaders with us in the hall. He went to sit at a small side table and let them give some bread and wine. And now he said to Ebal (**the captain**): “You and that almighty Man can surely allow this to us in return for the complete remittance. If you would have told me something about the power of this very exceptional Man, then I most certainly would have made much more human demands on you. But who could ever have suspected that among these men who are your old friends according to you, there is an almighty magician who is equal to the gods?”

[7] What applies with us Romans is that when something happens in the middle of a fierce battle as a sign from the gods, then the battle is completely finished.

[8] I had great fear in the air of your hall, by which I became completely weak, and that is why I want to strengthen myself again here. And secondly, to no one’s disadvantage, in good and complete seriousness, I would like to know that Man of wonders better. I think He will find me worthy for it since I will no more stand in His way as a threat. Thus, bring good wine and some

bread and salt for me and also my 2 servants.”

[9] Ebal arranged this immediately, and the 3 were excellently taken care of, and they ate and drank. After they somehow recovered by the wine from the fright and fear for Me, they talked louder and more daringly, and the captain wanted already several times to stand up from his chair and walk to Me to start a conversation with Me, but his 2 servants dissuaded him, for according to them it was not advisable to start a conversation with great magicians before they themselves wanted it. So the captain remained quiet and ordered some more wine.

91. THE RESURRECTION OF THE FLESH



INCE it was almost the end of the day and we spent quite some time having all kinds of useful discussions at the table, the disciples asked Me if it would not be a good idea to go outside for a while.

[2] I said: “The most difficult part of the work is still waiting for us, and this is more important than the environment outside which is not very attractive here in Gennesaret. But if one of you wants to go outside, he is free to do so, but I will stay here.”

[3] When I expressed Myself like this, **the disciples** said: “Lord, where You stay, we stay also. For only with You it is always good. Without You there is judgment, ruin and stern death everywhere.”

[4] I said: “Then stay where the Kingdom of God and its eternal spiritual life rule, for I Myself am the Truth, the Kingdom of God, the Revelation and the eternal Life. Whoever believes in Me will receive the eternal life when I will wake him up on the youngest day. I will also stay in the one who will stay in Me in faith and in love, and in whom I stay has already the eternal life in him and will never see, feel nor taste death. So stay here with Me, and by your love, in Me.”

[5] Now **Ebal** asked Me: “Lord and Master, most of the Jews believe also in a resurrection of the flesh in the Valley of Josaphat. But I find this somewhat strange. For firstly only the smallest part

of them are buried in the Valley of Josaphat, and secondly what will happen on that mysterious youngest day with the bodies of the people who never heard about a Valley of Josaphat and thus died in other, very distant places, who were partly burned and who were partly maybe just like with us Jews directly buried in the ground? And finally, thirdly, what will happen on the youngest day with those who were swallowed up by the sea and other waters and who were devoured by wild animals? When, according to our time measurement, will that youngest day come, which the Pharisees describe to us as horrible?

[6] Lord and Master, You can see that these things cannot be accepted by even the most common human sense. Only the darkest superstition, which never thinks or searches for anything, like the most common and most inferior Jews, as well as the gentiles as such, can accept such nonsense. However, they are harmful for a reasoning human being and they remove the faith which one has in a pure godly revelation, in the immortality of the soul after the death of the body, and also in the faith in a future resurrection of the flesh on that particular youngest day. What should we think about that now?"

[7] **I said: "Certainly not like the Pharisees are teaching you. Because the body, which serves the soul as an externally acting instrument, will not be resurrected in the Valley of Josaphat, neither anywhere else on this Earth on a specific youngest day to be united again with its soul in the form that it served the soul here for a short time.**

[8] **For truly, the resurrection of the flesh consists of the following: under 'flesh' must be understood the works that the soul has accomplished with its body.**

[9] **The Valley of Josaphat means the condition of the inner rest of the soul if his actions were always justified. That rest, which is not disturbed by any worldly love or lust and the passion that goes with it, and which can be compared to a completely quiet water surface in which you can clearly see the reflection of far distant and near regions, is then already the first beginning of the true**

youngest day of the soul, of his resurrection by My Spirit in him and at the same time also of his resurrection to eternal life.

[10] In that condition, the soul can then already see the good fruits of his works and rejoices in it more and more. And that seeing is the true resurrection of the flesh.

[11] For it is written: a mortal and perishable body is sown into the earth, and it will resurrect again as immortal and imperishable. If you associate this with your material body you must of course completely come into great confusion, but if you associate this with the good works of the soul, which are his true body, then by this you will come to the truth. For look, every good work that a soul has accomplished with his body to his fellowman on this Earth will pass away and dies already after the act, just like any other thing on this Earth, because when you have satiated a hungry person, quenched a thirsty person, clothed a naked person and freed a prisoner, then this noble act does not last, but it lasts only for the short time of the action itself. After that, it will often be forgotten by you, just like by the one to whom you have done this act. And thus, it is buried, and it is sown in the earthly kingdom of forgetfulness as something mortal and perishable. But on the true youngest day of the soul, as I have shown you, that act will everlastingly be resurrected by My Spirit in the soul. However no more in the form of the perishable earthly act but in the form of the eternally lasting fruit.

[12] And how will this look like? Well, in the beyond it will become like an eternal and most beautiful housing environment of the soul, provided with the best and richest of everything, and where in extreme happiness he will raise himself from one completion to the other.

[13] So as this is the situation of the works of a soul here, they will later on serve him as a housing environment in the beyond. And look, this is the true resurrection of the flesh. Believe this and keep to it, for this is how it is, and absolutely not otherwise.”

[14] **Ebal** said: “Yes, that sounds quite different than what the blind Pharisees were gibbering before the people. Also the sound

reason of man agrees completely with this, and a new, great light is rising for it. Thus, of the flesh, which served the soul here, not the size of a sun's particle will be united with the soul and resurrected in the beyond to eternal life?"

[15] **I** said: "Not as an element of the soul who lives eternally by My Spirit, because innerly he will become pure spirit himself. But for what concerns the profile of his¹ outer form and in particular his clothing, the soul-etheric particles of his earthly body will again be united with him in spiritual purity. But of the coarse organic body, not even the size of one atom, because the destination of that body is the same as all other matter of the Earth, as this also is dissolved in ever better nature spirits, and as it was also initially arranged with much less pure nature spirits that were on a very low level of judgment.

[16] The nature spirits that are already leaving the coarse matter can in time also become human souls. But once your soul will be in that Valley of Josaphat you will understand more of this. Therefore, let us not say anything anymore about this now.

[17] Although the captain and his 2 servants listened very attentively to your questions and the explanation that I gave you, they nevertheless understood nothing of it. Therefore, they soon will bother us with their Greek wisdom. So we will very patiently and quietly wait a bit for their attack on us."

92. THE PHILOSOPHICAL QUESTIONS OF THE CAPTAIN



WHEN I said that to Ebal, **the captain** stood immediately up from his chair and came with a friendly face to Me. When he was close to Me, he said: "Great and mighty Master in the mysterious sphere of Your art and science by which You have subdued all secret powers of nature, I listened to your conversations with great attention and have concluded that you all

¹ the person's

belong to that Jewish religious cult which contains many good things, but besides that, also a lot of very bad things out of which slowly the many abuses of your priests have developed in a much worse degree than with us gentiles, as we are called by your fundamentalists.

[2] But no matter how, You, very mighty Master, seem to be much deeper initiated in your religion than the otherwise also very wise Ebal. Only, I do not understand what You meant to say when You said that only You are the basic principal of all existence, life and survival. Being the Truth and the eternal Life. Whoever believes in You and loves You, would never see, feel or taste death. And also that You are the One who will resurrect the souls to eternal life on the youngest day, and more of such things.

[3] Is that only Your wise manner of speaking or are You Yourself this or that mysterious 'I' who presents Himself to us men as the basic principle of all existence, life and subsistence. I am not a leek in the old Greek wisdom, and You also can speak to me from Your wisdom which I now gladly would like to know better."

[4] **I said:** "Then come with your 2 subordinates to sit at this table. Then we will see how far you can be led."

[5] **Then the captain called his subordinates at once to our table.**

[6] **When they were with us, I said to the captain:** "Tell Me now openly what you want to know from Me. But do not speak about what I just discussed with friend Ebal, because your reason cannot understand that."

[7] **When the captain heard this from Me, he was greatly embarrassed and he did not know what he actually should ask Me. After having thought about it for a while, he said:** "Perfectly mighty Master, in what kind of school, which I certainly do not know, were You formed?"

[8] **I said:** "In My highest own *school*. And this from eternity, because before there was any existence in the endless space, was I, for what concerns My most inner Spirit, and I filled the eternal infinity."

[9] **When the captain heard that, he looked at Me very surprised**

and said: “Is Your inner *being* than greater than Your outer *being*? Your speaking is confused. How must we understand that? What do You mean by that?”

[10] **I said:** “The full truth, but since there is until now no truth in you, you also cannot understand this first truth. But listen, I will reveal you more.

[11] **Look,** in the beginning of all beginning and for the existence of all existence was the Word. This Word was with God, for God Himself was the Word, and everything which is and which fills the endless space, about which your wise men spoke, was created by the Word, and without that Word, nothing *was created*.

[12] **Now the eternal Word took on the flesh out of Himself and came now as a human being to His people in this world, and those who are His do not recognize it. And you are also a human being and do not recognize the eternal Word in Me because you are blind of heart. Did you not read the prophets of the Jews?”**

[13] **The captain said:** “I have read them, yes, as well as many others, but who can understand them? Your priests do not understand them, how can I as a Roman understand them? They wrote as incomprehensibly as You have now spoken to me about Yourself.

[14] **I can see that I will never receive complete clearness with You. Let us, if You like, rather speak about other things. Please tell me, wonderful, supreme mighty Master, in which country were You actually born, and to which people do You belong for what concerns Your body?”**

[15] **I said:** “Look, here next to Me sits the mother of My body. Speak about that with her.”

[16] **Then the captain turned to Mary, and she told him everything, extensively and very precise, from her conception until My 12th year, and how miraculous it always was with Me.**

[17] **This story made the 3 Romans greatly wonder, and they did not know what they actually had to think of Me. For they no more believed already for a long time in their gods, and still less in the God of the Jews. They completely lived according to Epicurus, and**

a deity was for them an absurdity. But now they discovered divine qualities in Me, and they did not know how they could combine this with someone who in their opinion also lived and existed temporarily as a human being.

[18] **Therefore, the captain asked Me:** “Great Lord and Master. Tell me if You will also die for what concerns Your body, or that You will continue to live forever.”

[19] **I said:** “There is only a short time left. Then I will, as I am now, return from where I came, and those who are Mine will be with Me forever.”

[20] **The captain said:** “Then who are those whom You call Yours, and where is the place to where You already in a short time will return?”

[21] **I said:** “Those who are Mine are those who believe in Me, who love Me and keep My commandments. The place however is not like the places on this Earth, but it is the Kingdom of God which is now established by Me among the people and in the heart of the people.

[22] That Kingdom of true, eternal life cannot be reached along the broad roads of this world, but only along a very small path, and this is called humility, patience, self-denial with all temptations that come from this world, and complete dedication to the will of the one, only true God.”

[23] **The captain said:** “Where can it be known what God wants, and what are Your commandments actually which those who are Yours have to follow?”

[24] **I said:** “My will is God’s will and My commandments are God’s commandments. Whoever does My will, and who will thus keep My commandments, will walk on the good way to the Kingdom of God. Do the same. Then you also will walk on the right way to the Kingdom of God.”

[25] Then the captain stood up from his chair, walked to one of My disciples and asked him what he thought of Me.

[26] **That one said:** “We all think of Him what He told you Himself. He is the Lord, and we are His disciples. In Him lives the

fullness of God. Apart from Him there is no God.”

[27] **After these words, the captain left the disciple and returned to Me.**

93. THE OBJECTIONS OF THE CAPTAIN AGAINST THE DIVINITY OF THE LORD

WHEN the captain went to sit down on his chair again and asked his 2 subordinates in the Roman language for their opinion about Me, this after all the things they had heard.

[2] **One of them said:** “It is difficult for us to form an opinion about this. We experienced the extraordinary power of His will up there in the air, and we need no other proof that there is divine power in this Man, otherwise He certainly could not have lifted us up in the air and keep us there without any visible means. However, we all lost our faith in an almighty divine Being too much, because our gods seem to be entirely insignificant for the sense organs and for the reason of every thinking man, and now we suddenly meet a real God in the form of a man and do not know what to think of Him now. I think that this cannot be understood in one time.

[3] However, we heard already many things in Bethlehem and also near Jerusalem about this Man, and we thought that He either could be a God Himself or else a rare great magician, like they originate for instance from the school of the Essenes. But what we ourselves experienced here now goes much further than our previous speculations. All magic ends here, and instead of that, there is an unmistakable divine power and almightiness.

[4] Together with that, there is firstly that trustworthy story of His mother, how He bodily came into this world, and about His life, and that He never had to learn anything in some school because He already came into this world equipped with the highest wisdom. And secondly, what He claimed about Himself now. And I myself cannot help it but to consider Him in full earnest as how He represented Himself to us, even if it is for us Romans in an

inconceivable manner, and also what the man, with whom you just spoke, testified about Him. This is my opinion, and I think that I am not mistaken.”

[5] **The captain said:** “I do not want to say that you are wrong in general, but in the background I still have some important objections. If that Man can solve these, then I will also share your opinion and remain with it.”

[6] **Then the captain turned again to Me and said:** “Great Lord and Master, I am now almost at the point to accept You as these who are Yours have accepted You, but I still have some considerable objections. Once these are solved then also I will be won.

[7] These objections of mine are the following: thus in You lives the fullness of an only true God? If that is so, then why did You let all those numberless people wait so long for You?

[8] You say that only those who are Yours, who believe in You, love You and keep Your commandments will receive the eternal life in Your Kingdom of God. If that is so, and if everything that exists is created by the power of Your eternal word, just like all men who unfortunately lived at any time without having known You – which could not be their fault – then what will happen with those people who never could have known You? What will happen to the eternal life of their soul in Your Kingdom of God? For they could not have believed in You, could not have loved You, neither could they have kept Your commandments, because they were not able to know anything about You.

[9] Look, these are my well founded objections. Please solve these for me, then I also will firmly believe in You, love You more than one of those who are Yours and keep Your commandments, for I am a true Roman and not a Greek whose loyalty is not firm. But I also am someone who will not so easily accept and believe something which is not indisputably proved as a diamond-hard truth. Thus, solve my doubts.”

94. THE CONTINUOUS EFFORTS OF THE LORD FOR THE PEOPLE



SAID: “Friend, you adopted this and that by reading the Greek philosophers, but you never understood the books of the old Egyptians, and you only briefly read a few fragments of the Scripture of the Jews since Moses. And also these you never understood.

[2] Look, the One in Me who is now speaking to you, spoke also like this to the first human pair of this Earth and gave them the same commandments which I now again give to you people who have completely forgotten the one true God and Lord. However, the people who were gifted with a completely free will, let themselves all too easily be blinded by the world and its tempting spirit. They fled away from God and did whatever they pleased. By that, their souls became darkened and their heart became hardened.

[3] I always sent messengers from the Heavens to teach the blinded people, but only a few paid attention to them. The great mass of people did not want to hear them or know about them.

[4] From time to time, by My Spirit, I awakened men and younglings who taught the people and who made every effort to bring them back to the old truth. Only a few listened to them, and still less people reacted on it. The great mass of people however, persecuted them, tortured them and even killed them.

[5] I also did not refrain from visiting a too degenerated people with great and small chastisements and judgments. However, also these brought only a few to a short time of improvement, but all too soon, again the evil worldly spirit came instead of Me.

[6] When at the time of Moses, the Israeli people received again laws from Me on the Sinai in the desert, under lightning, thunder and fire, they first listened with fear and trembling to My good words that could be heard from afar, but when the preaching lasted a longer time, the people became partly used to it and did not care much about it anymore. Another part had enough of

My continuous teaching and asked Me to reveal My will only to Moses instead of to the whole people. They would hear and obey that will from him. However, in the mean time the people wanted to leave Mount Sinai because it was too turbulent there and they wanted to build their dwelling huts in a valley that was far away from there.

[7] After much begging, it was permitted to the people. But it did not take long before the people forgot Me and the great events on the Mount Sinai entirely, molded a calf from the great quantity of gold that they brought from Egypt, danced around it and gave it godly honor.

[8] I showed this to Moses, sent him to the people who really did not think of Me anymore, and let them be greatly chastised in the manner as Moses described it later on.

[9] Then the people did indeed return to Me, but there were always many who let themselves be tempted by evil worldly lusts to transgress some of My commandments and so to sin against My regulations.

[10] Temporary punishments had to be set up by Moses for the transgression of My commandments and regulations to put order among the people.

[11] When the people were later lead out of the desert into the Promised Land and took it into possession as if from My hand, they were almost completely ruled by Me through wise judges who were continuously in contact with Me. And under My personal rulership they became big and mighty, and their prosperity was greater than that of no matter what other people in the world.

[12] Then they became proud and they looked at the luster of other people who were dominated by a worldly king in a tyrannical way. The vain worldly luster blinded the people. They wanted the luster also, became unsatisfied with My government and wanted a worldly king by the judge Samuel who was filled with My Spirit, and so they committed the greatest and most insolent of all sins.

[13] So the people fell ever deeper, although I never failed to

admonish them by awakened prophets who were filled with My Spirit, to better their lives and do penance, clearly showing them the consequences which they could expect because of their hardness. And this is how I have dealt with this people until now. And now I have come Myself, clothed with flesh.

[14] But now look at the very great number of Jews who are hating and persecuting Me and are trying to grab and kill this body of Mine instead of accepting Me and believing in Me, since I make Myself known everywhere as the One whom I certainly am through unheard-of miracles and signs which are beyond any doubt.

[15] But if from My side, at all times, everywhere and unceasingly, I took care of the people's spiritual development in the manner as I briefly showed you now, then how can you, a Roman gifted with great intelligence, ask Me questions as to why I came only now to you few people to establish the Kingdom of God which is the Kingdom of eternal life?

[16] You can travel to all the countries that you know and where the inhabitants have still somehow the ability to accept My teaching, and investigate whether even at this time they know about My presence here and My activity.

[17] In many countries and kingdoms that you still do not know, the better men received inner visions of what happens here now. Only truly animal men who live very wildly in the most hidden corners of the Earth cannot receive any message about Me because they are by far still not capable to understand it, but in time they also will be taken care of.

[18] And so you see that the question that you asked Me was totally useless. If you still want to ask Me questions, then do ask better things which will be more useful to you than what you have asked Me now.”

95. THE CAPTAIN ASKS FOR AN EXPLANATION ABOUT THE NATURE OF THE EARTH



WHEN the captain heard what I said, he was thinking deeply, as well as his 2 subordinates, and now it took some time before at the whole table someone talked to his neighbor. I Myself kept silent also, but all eyes and ears were directed on Me.

[2] Finally a strong blast of wind broke the silence, and at once the captain asked Ebal what that was, for he had the impression that it thundered. His companions also thought to have heard a thunder.

[3] **Ebal said:** “Here at the lake, and especially in this bay such phenomena are really not rare in this time, but this blast of wind which appeared so suddenly and which seemed to be a thunder could mean something greater because of the supreme presence of the Lord over all things in Heaven and on Earth. But what it is, He will know best. I cannot tell you anything more about this.”

[4] **When Ebal told this to the captain,** at once he turned again to Me and said – now with the full courage of a Roman soldier: “Supreme Lord and Master, I concluded from Your words that in You really lives the highest Spirit of the one only true deity. Without Your will nothing can happen, originate, work, exist and perish in Heaven and on this Earth. And if something happens, originates, works and exists, You certainly will know in Your eternal Spirit of eternity the reason and the cause as to how You want to realize Your wise intensions. Also this blast of wind will for You certainly not be strange or unknown. Then how did it originate and for what purpose?”

[5] **I said:** “Yes, My friend, a long time will still pass away before you will understand from where the wind comes from, how it originates and for what purpose, for as long as your ideas about the form and the nature of the Earth are totally wrong you will never be able to understand how the wind originates, where it comes from, where it is going and why it originated.

[6] **First you have to well know the ground and the earth’s surface**

that carries you. Only after that you can ask for the cause of the phenomena on this Earth.”

[7] **The captain said:** “Lord and Master, who except You would and can explain the true nature of the Earth to me? You surely know what ideas we have about our Earth, and I also discussed a lot with your scribes about the nature of our Earth and did not receive any better information. On the contrary it was still more unclear and confused.

[8] Also with the Essenes – who know everything and can do everything – I discussed about the nature of the Earth, the moon, the sun and the stars, but the explanation that I received was not one hair better than what I already had.

[9] You certainly can give me the best explanation about this Earth, about the moon, about the sun and also about the stars. I and my 2 companions ask You for this. For I realized already for a long time that our opinion and our old, memorized ideas of the Earth, as well as the stars in the sky cannot be right, because the phenomena that are connected with it can absolutely not or difficultly be explained by all kinds of superstitious additions with which anyone who in all things searches for and thinks about the truth is badly served. O Lord and Master, we ask You for it once more.”

[10] **On this I said:** “Look, the sun is already going down, and there will be too little time to entirely satisfy your desire.”

[11] **The captain said again:** “O Lord and Master, if this matter is not unpleasant for You, we want to listen to You for the whole night with the greatest attention and quietness.”

[12] **I said:** “Well all right then. Just look at this apparent young man here. He is one of My real servants for already a long time. Let him fulfill your wish. In what he does and says you will recognize My power in him.”

[13] **Then I gave a sign to Raphael, and he quickly stood up, walked to the 3 and said:** “It is not necessary to explain all this again for all the others who sit here at the table, because they are already completely initiated in everything, but for you I want to do it according to the will of the Lord. Let us go outside in the open,

so that we can be finished sooner.”

[14] On this, our captain and his 2 subordinates stood up from the table, and with burning curiosity they went with Raphael outside.

96. RAPHAEL AS A TEACHER IN ASTRONOMY



APHAEL took them outside to the lake at a big open space that was used by the Romans as military training field where no one was there at night.

[2] Arriving in the middle of that space, **Raphael** said to the 3: “There are always 2 ways to come to a big and important understanding: the first is the long, boring and difficult way by means of wide-ranging explanations and discussions which will and can almost never come to an end. The second, short and efficient way is by means of examples. And this I want and can apply to you now.”

[3] **The captain said:** “It will not be easy to give us striking examples of what we still do not have any idea.”

[4] **Raphael said:** “Let me take care of that because I have the power for it, given to me by the Lord. So be very attentive to what you will see now. I will first show you the whole Earth, meaning its surface, exactly as it is now, and put it big enough before your eyes, so that it will be easy for you to see.”

[5] When Raphael had said that, a little Earth globe, with a diameter of still 2 ½ men heights, was floating before the eyes of the extremely amazed Romans. It was so well illuminated by its own light that despite the advanced twilight everything on the surface was very well distinguishable, and known places could also immediately be seen and recognized for what they were.

[6] Also, the Earth globe turned around its axis, but much faster compared to the real Earth in order to see it faster. All the continents, a great number of isles, all the seas, as well as all the lakes, and streams and rivers, and mountains and valleys could be seen realistically. And what the 3 knew, they also recognized for what they were.

[7] When the Romans had very carefully viewed that Earth globe for almost 1 hour, by which Raphael clearly explained to them everything with a few words, giving them a correct idea of the Earth, **the 3 of them** said: “O what are men still blind, and what kind of ridiculously foolish ideas they have of the Earth that carries and feeds them.”

[8] **Then Raphael** said: “Look, as by this example you have received the right knowledge about the whole Earth, faster than when a geologist would have explained it to you with many words, no matter how clearly, so I will also make clear to you the relation of the Earth to the moon, the sun and the other planets. We will put the Earth globe now farther away from us in the air, and the moon, as its companion will be represented before your eyes here at a proportional distance.”

[9] When Raphael had said that, the moon – proportionally represented as a small ball – was brought into existence before the amazed eyes of the Romans, very clearly and easily recognizable.

[10] First the side that is always turned towards the Earth was carefully viewed, from top to bottom, and also explained when necessary, and only after that, the back side, where also a correct explanation was not lacking.

[11] **Then the captain** said: “This is a sad world compared to our Earth. The people, who live only on this side, as you just explained, cannot reach a great wisdom because on such a small, extremely meager world, their perception of the things which God has created is very limited. And because of their order of day *and night*, which is entirely unlike and different compared to that of the Earth, they also have almost no time to carefully view, study, compare and draw the necessary conclusions from even the little things on that small world. I suppose they are mostly similar to our apes?”

[12] **Raphael** said: “Then you are greatly mistaken, even if it seems to be so according to your reason. I would not like you to associate with a moon inhabitant, because then your inner wisdom would certainly fall short.

[13] Although you people of this Earth have much outer experience, and thus also much outer knowledge, but you are lacking the inner knowledge of life, and that is indescribably more important than all that outer market-screaming, vain trifle.

[14] On the other hand, the moon people are strong in the introspective life in which they also very well know you, the inhabitants of this Earth. But they only rarely have any pleasure in you because by your outer judged mentality you withdrew too far from the inner truth of life. They say of you that you are dead souls. Now if this is the case with the inhabitants of the moon, they certainly are on a higher level of life than your earthly apes.”

[15] **The captain said:** “If this is the case with the inhabitants of the moon then I will of course immediately withdraw my opinion, and through you I ask them many times to forgive me.”

[16] **Raphael said:** “Never mind, and let us return to our subject. After the Earth, we well came to know the moon¹. But now what about these 2 celestial bodies in relation to the sun? Before I will let you completely understand this, I briefly must make you acquainted with the planets that you know at least by their names.

[17] Although there are a few planets which also belong to this sun that gives light and warmth to the Earth, and which receive its light and warmth from it, just like the Earth, I will limit myself to only the planets of which you know their name, and will present them to you in their true form one by one before your eyes. So there is Mercury, the planet that is closest to the sun.”

[18] **The 3 Romans saw this planet at once and admired the many things that were similar with our Earth, and Raphael gave detailed explanations.**

[19] **When the 3 were soon ready with Mercury, Venus was next, and then Mars, to which the 3 looked at in the beginning with some uneasiness, but when they saw that it was only a planet which was quite similar to the Earth instead of their god of war,**

¹ Described in detail in “Earth and Moon”.

they also were quickly used to that. After Mars came in proportionate size the big Jupiter with its 4 moons, about which the Romans were very amazed. Raphael explained briefly to them what was most important about which they highly praised his might and wisdom. Then he let Saturn¹ appear, about which the Romans were even more amazed compared to all the other planets before. And Raphael took more time to explain this exceptional planet than with any of the former *planets*, with exception of our Earth.

97. RAPHAEL EXPLAINS THE RELATION OF THE PLANETS TO THE SUN



WHEN Raphael had shown all the planets that were mentioned to the Romans in the manner described, he furthermore said to them: “It is not enough for you to know that the conditions of these stars are quite different from what you totally erroneously thought. You also should very clearly understand the relation of all the planets, which you have seen now, to the sun. So pay attention now.

[2] I will put the sun very small before your eyes. Firstly you can see here a rather big ball with a diameter of 1 man’s height surrounded by a powerful, white radiance. This ball which represents the sun may not be surrounded by the full strength of the light of the sun, otherwise you will not be able to look at it more closely. So let it be sufficient for you to know that this ball represents the sun.

[3] Look, the radiance, which surrounds the ball, is the own atmosphere of this celestial body which completely surrounds it. The real sun, which in its entirety is about 1,000 times 1,000 times greater than this Earth, has a radiance that is a lot more powerful. But be attentive now, I will open up this radiant surrounding for a few moments, so that you will be able to see how the actual solid

¹ See book “Saturn”.

sun globe looks like and also that it was created by the Lord for still a lot of other reasons than only to illuminate and to warm up the other celestial bodies.”

[4] Then the 3 went closer to the ball – to the place where it was uncovered, and they watched it with great attention. Raphael gave detailed and easy to understand explanations¹.

[5] When the 3 had received, and also understood, a very correct overview of the sun in hardly a ¼ of an hour, of its arrangement, its living environment and its activity, influence and relation in respect to the other planets of which they could recognize the corresponding arrangement in certain belts, **Raphael** said: “Be very attentive now, for now will come for you Romans the actual main thing. Once you will understand that, you also will be freed from the wrong belief by which you think that the Earth is the center, and that everything – the sun, the moon and all the stars – move around the Earth and must travel every day trough your sea, which according to you reaches from one end of the sky to the other.

[6] There is our sun ball, and look, I will first line up in a straight line from the sun ball, *and* in their right proportion and distance, all the planets that you know.”

[7] Then the Romans saw first Mercury, after that Venus, then the Earth, and one after another the other planets, all in the right proportion and right distance, and they had to walk of course quite a distance along the flat shore of the lake before they came to Saturn. Besides that, they discovered in a still greater distance 2 illuminated points that looked like planets, and they asked Raphael what they were.

[8] **Raphael** said: “I told you in the beginning that, besides those planets that you know by name, there still are a few others. But these are of no concern to you now. In later times they also will be discovered by some wise people and will be described in detail.

[9] Between Mars and Jupiter you also can see a great number of

¹ See book ‘The Natural Sun’.

illuminated points that look like planets. Also these are of no concern to you now. In time also these will be discovered by those wise men and be described in detail. If you later want to know more about these, then speak to the disciples of the Lord about them, for they are initiated in all the secrets of the visible starry sky. Also in Kis with the great toll renter Kisjona, who is present here now, you easily will find a Greek with the name Philopold, who is also here now, and besides that also a few highly placed Romans even in Rome who are initiated in all those things. You can learn many things from them.

[10] But we will leave this to rest now and return to our sun ball, so that I still can show you the movements of the different planets around the sun.”

[11] Now the 3 returned with Raphael to the sun ball.

[12] Raphael placed it high in the sky, so that all the planets could circle around it. It was still visible in the middle of all the planets, and the planets circled around it in the corresponding proportions, but in a short time. Raphael divided the time of 1 hour so well that for instance Saturn only needed 1 hour for its complete circuit, and all the closer planets moved in proportionate, mathematically accurate shorter spaces of time, as well as the moons around the bigger planets to which they belonged. This was an exceptionally amazing spectacle for the Romans – and this all the more because Raphael explained all those movements precisely and very understandably.

[13] When Saturn returned again at the point where it began to move, **Raphael** let everything disappear again and said: “Now we do not need the examples anymore since they have accomplished their good service for you. If you understand and also realize this matter from its true basis that this is the only way it can be and not otherwise, then we will return to the house of the righteous Ebal.”

[14] The Romans were satisfied with that and walked now very happily with Raphael to Ebal’s house where they all met us at the table where we cheerfully partook of the evening meal.

[15] The first thing they did was to thank Me for everything they had learned in such a short time by that wonderful young man.

[16] **I** said to them: “Now come and sit with us, eat and drink and strengthen yourselves. Only after that we will talk with each other again.”

[17] At once, that is what the 3 also did, and they refreshed themselves with fish, bread and wine.

98. THE CONDITIONS FOR RECEIVING WISDOM



AFTER we all had physically strengthened ourselves, the captain asked for Kisjona and Philopold.

[2] **I** said to him: “See the men here at My right side. The first one is Kisjona and the second is Philopold. You will often have the opportunity to speak with them. But I know about all the things you would like to speak with Philopold, for which it is however not the right opportunity and time now. So rather delay your intention until another time. You saw and learned a lot today to eliminate your old pagan superstition. Reflect on that, so that it will stay in your memory and in your heart, and that you will not lose it again when you soon will return again to your worldly things and activities.

[3] What you and your companions came to know now, the men of the ancient times knew also, but when their descendants spent more and more time with the things of this world and became proud and were lusting for power they soon forgot the old wisdom, did not pay attention to it anymore and thought that it was not necessary anymore to know such things to sustain life. According to them it was sufficient when only certain wise men knew about it. The people on the other hand should only care about their flocks and their fields, gardens, pastures and prey hunting and not about the things at the sky. Look, because of that, the people and their leaders became dumb and blind, not only in these *things* but also in other things, and finally they fell into complete dark superstition – as this is still the case now – and they drew back from the truth and

fled for its light.

[4] In addition to all wisdom, man can also take care for what he needs for his body, but everyone should especially take care for what concerns his soul and the spirit of life in the soul and be concerned about that. For no one was set on this world for the sake of food, drink or for trying to be important, but for the life according to the order which God faithfully revealed to him, and this only for the purpose which God set before him.

[5] Now that you have received here the since long lost truth concerning the things of Heaven, digest in your soul what you have received. Once you will have strengthened yourself in this you can look after something further with Philopold.”

[6] **The captain** said: “Yes, Lord and Master, You are right in all things. I realize now how many and great things I have received by Your mercy from this wonderful young man what concerns the visible sky. Once I will have ordered all that in myself and will also have made drawings of it – what I can do well – to teach others, I will look after further things.”

[7] **I** said: “You are right in this, but the best thing is mainly to search for the Kingdom of God and its justice in yourself by living and acting according to My teaching. The one who has found that in himself will truly also receive the rest as a free extra gift because the spirit in man is from God, and when this has become lord in man, it teaches the soul in 1 hour much more than what you can learn from even the most wise teachers on Earth in 1,000 years.

[8] My Raphael, who is a completely pure spirit – what you can believe from Me and remember – has shown the 3 of you in what kind of short time he can teach you things which men with all their cleverness and with all their zeal and searching, investigating and thinking cannot know in more than 1,000 years in that kind of purity and truth. In this manner, a soul can learn from a spirit in 1 moment endlessly much more than men among each other with their natural reason. Remember this well and act accordingly.”

[9] **The captain** said: “Lord and Master, the basic principles of

Your teaching are known to me. Namely that firstly one should believe in You and also recognize the one, only true God in You. Then to also love that recognized God as the best and most perfect eternal Being above all and one's fellowman as oneself, and that one should also observe and keep the commandments of Moses.

[10] Well now, what concerns Your demands, these should be easy to keep, but Moses has prescribed a great number of laws, precepts and regulations which are firstly difficult to remember and to understand, and then also difficult to observe and to keep.

[11] Must all those laws, precepts and regulations also be kept and faithfully observed by every person who wants to bring Your Spirit in himself to full rulership, and thus wants to receive Your Kingdom and its full justice?"

[12] **I said: "If you recognize in Me the one, only true God, believe in Him and actively love Him above all and your fellowman as yourself, then you have fulfilled by that also everything that Moses and all the prophets have taught. For concerning the duties of men in relation to God and each other they said with their many words nothing else than what I have told you in those few words.**

[13] **But then it means that you as a Roman captain should not, on your own authority, immediately demand from someone like Ebal who blamelessly offended against your regulations that came from your blind zeal, such great fine in gold and silver that – with exception of Jerusalem and the temple – almost the whole of Palestine, Samaria and Galilee could not bring together. Because in such demand there is not one spark of neighborly love or justice of the Kingdom of God in man, for from such demand appears not even a spark of your Roman justice, and that demand gave evidence that you hardly know its basic principles.**

[14] **If you want to live and act according to My teaching, you must in the future strictly change your sharp regulations which you made on your own authority, because with such regulations you still are very far away from true neighborly love, and thus from the Kingdom of God. And the knowledge that you now have from the Earth, the moon, the sun and the other planets**

will not exalt you in itself. For everything that you can see with your physical eyes in the great, visible space has only value for the Kingdom of God in man when it is also seen from that point of view and spiritually enlightened. In itself, as matter, it has no value for the whole man, but has only an extremely fleeting and transitory value for the body. That, My friend, I say to you, so that you would act accordingly.”

[15] **The captain said:** “Lord and Master, I thank You also for this very true and good advice that I certainly will also follow as far as this is possible for me. For the sake of the order I will have to look very strict, but in my heart it will look different. And I suppose that this will not be wrong in Your eyes, o Lord and Master?”

[16] **I said:** “O not at all, but be only strict according to the real laws of Rome which show a lot of alleviations for certain small offences. A soft judge in this world will also be judged softly by Me in the other *world*, and the merciful person will also find mercy with Me. In short, with the same measure with which you measure, will also be measured to you.”

[17] The captain took this at heart, and now **I** said to all those present: “With this, a heavy work, of which I told you before during the midday meal, is well ended, and we count 3 new disciples. But since it is now already quite late at night, we will again give our limbs the necessary rest.”

[18] Then I stood up with a few disciples and I went to another room to rest, and so did also Mary and Jarah. However, the others remained seated and discussed with each other about Me, My teachings and deeds.

99. RAPHAEL EXPLAINS HIS POWER



HE group to which also our Ebal, Kisjona and Philopold still belonged, stayed almost until the morning at the table, together with Raphael who also stayed with them. My James the elder was the main speaker because he knew Me well, already since My birth, and he was the one who was most of all

close by Me. And Raphael on his part explained what seemed to be mysterious to the others.

[2] **Close to the morning, the captain asked Raphael:** “Now that we have heard so many splendid and great wonderful things from your mouth, maybe you would like to be so kind to explain a little for us 3 Romans as to what kind of being you actually are, and what kind of substance it was out of which you have formed the visible sky so beautifully with all those countless things that were on it.”

[3] **Raphael said:** “In the first place, I am in every respect a human being like you, but with the important difference that I can change this body that you can see now, into my pure spiritual being, and that I have lived and was active as a human being of flesh and blood on this Earth for many years in loyal dedication to God the Lord, already almost 4,000 years ago – even before the flood of Noah.

[4] However, now I am a citizen of the Heavens of God, and His servant and helper forever. My power is God’s power. That is why I can do everything what the Spirit in me wills. Now if you know this, you also will know out of which substance I have formed the visible sky before you.

[5] There is no other substance in the whole of infinity than only the will of God. Everything you see, hear, feel or perceive by one of the sense organs, are the thoughts of God, and when He wills, they also exist at once.

[6] What God as the original eternal Spirit can do in Himself and by Himself, the Spirit of God in man can do also. For God Himself is in Himself the purest Love. Thus in Himself *He is* also the purest fire of Life. Thus *He is* also the purest and brightest Light, and thus in Himself the highest Wisdom, and by that also the highest active Might and Power everywhere.

[7] The perfectly wise order of this highest might and power is the eternal law to which all things have to conform. This law rules also over the body of man. However, to the soul of man a free will is given, and the law is revealed to him so that he would accept it and

conform his will to it and would live and act accordingly in order to become in this way completely similar to God, which is his destiny.

[8] However, in this world of development, only a very little part of the law of the divine order has been entrusted to the soul to observe. If he is loyal in that small part, he also will be set over great things, but not before he has come to such great skill in the small part of the law of order – which has been revealed to him – that it has become completely his own as if inborn. For otherwise he cannot attain in himself to the inner awareness of his free independence and can thus also not discern all the things that the divine will can do in him and through him.

[9] I do not need to give you any further proof of what I, who am also a man, can achieve through the full power of the divine will. Once you will have come to a great skill to observe the divine will, which you fully came to know here, and also to deny yourself of all the lusts of the world that seduce you, then you also will be aware in yourself what kind of power your soul has received.

[10] But only practice will make the master. If man practices too little, he will eternally remain a bungler and cannot be used for anything great or exceptional. Or would you as a Roman captain who are very well experienced in the art of war, entrust an important position to someone before you will have convinced yourself that he knows all that is required for that post?

[11] God does not need to test man in all manners and put him to the proof to convince Himself if he is already capable for a great and important position, for He always knows very clearly how much progress a soul has made in his inner life's completion. But let the soul examine himself to know how far he has progressed in all self-denial for what concerns the enticements for the lusts of this world, how far he entirely has become one with the chosen and actively observed will of God and if he is still a bungler or maybe already a master, and then God the Lord will not hesitate to make the power of His will known in him.

[12] Just look at several of the disciples of the Lord. If they would

like to do something from the will of the Lord that already became very mighty in them, one or the other could also perform something which would certainly not seem less miraculous to you than what I have performed for you. But their real love for the Lord and their true humility before Him tell them: 'O, what are we still weak disciples compared to You'. And therefore they still wait until the Lord will tell them: 'Go now into the world, teach My will to everyone and perform works in My name.' Then they will, wherever it is necessary, also do the same signs that the Lord is doing now Himself, and which also I am doing from time to time by the will of the Lord in me.

[13] However, the power of the divine will, will not be poured into man like for instance the milk with a child, but he should, with his own willpower, which is completely free in man, as it were draw it to himself with force.

[14] That this is so and not any different, is obvious from the fact that the Lord Himself, for whom all things are possible, teaches His disciples, draws them to Himself and shows them what they should do to make His will the same as their own will, which will then be their possession forever.

[15] What the disciples, who were chosen by the Lord Himself, should do in order to be completely like Him is what every other person should do if he wants to receive the power of the divine will in his soul.

[16] I have very clearly shown you now out of which substance I have formed the things of the visible sky for you, but do take care now that in time you all will become what I am now. The 'how' I have shown you. And now you still can give your bodies some rest for a short time, for we will not have to wait long before the morning will come."

[17] After these words of Raphael, the 3 Romans stood up, thanked Raphael for this lesson, and with full of good intentions they went home where they found everything in perfect order. But they all 3 rested little, for in the spirit of their natural reason they were still too busy, and they did not know how they could

combine their worldly profession with My will, which they heard from Me and also from Raphael.

[18] With much talking from each side, the morning was fully there, and the captain had to command his soldiers for that day. The soldiers were silently surprised that the captain, who was otherwise very strict, gave only very meek and friendly orders, and they thought that something very special must have happened. But of course they wisely did not show that they noticed the meekness of the captain, for they preferred of course an easy service than a hard one.

100. THE QUESTION OF THE CAPTAIN ABOUT THE KILLING OF ANIMALS



WHEN it had become fully morning, but still a short while before sunset, I was already outside with a few of My disciples, and also Raphael was with us. Shortly after, also all the others followed. It also did not take long before the 3 Romans came.

[2] We were at the shore of the lake and watched the play of the waves, and the disciples washed their feet and hands with the clean water. The 3 Romans wanted to ask Me a few things and they therefore stood near to Me and Raphael.

[3] But I said to them: “The day has still 10 full hours, and a lot of questions can still be asked during that time. But now we will very quietly enjoy the morning.”

[4] The 3 were satisfied with that and they washed their face with the water of the lake to freshen up and strengthen their eyes, which somehow lacked the nightly sleep.

[5] So we stayed completely peacefully close at the shore of the lake for about 1 hour and went then to a small hill that was elevated towards the south above the water surface. From that hill we had a beautiful view to the west, and at the shore, on a rather big surface that was overgrown with much reed and reed pipes, a few water birds could be seen that were searching for their food

in the water and were also greedily eating it.

[6] Now **the captain** could no more keep silent. He quickly went to Raphael and said: “Listen, wise and mighty citizen of a better world than this Earth. Generally I am very satisfied with the often beautiful arrangement of this Earth of ours, how it is formed and how the plants are ordered, but what concerns the animals, in the kind of circumstances in which they live and are active among each other, absolutely not.

[7] It was taken care of that all the plants and vegetation would take their food from the soil, from the water, from the air and from the warmth of the sunlight, and so they would excellently flourish. Only the animals, and for a great part also us human beings must catch animals, kill them and eat their flesh in order to feed our body.

[8] Look, this makes the heart and the mind of man unmistakably wild. This is what I noticed in Rome all too often with the often terrible bullfights and other fights of wild, devouring animals in especially built and arranged cages. For in Rome and also in a lot of other places such fights with animals are kept to ever stir up the eagerness for war and the brave fighting spirit and keep it alive, especially for the soldiers and the citizens.

[9] And from who did men learn that wild waging of war where no trace of the love for God and of the love for fellowman can be found?

[10] Here, look down there in the water. What did those poor fishes actually do wrong that they often are caught out of the water and eaten up by thousands by the greedy water birds? Can all those numberless different sorts of animals in the air, on the Earth and in the water not feed themselves just like the tame house animals with the also numberless different sorts of plants? Must all kinds of flesh eating animals of prey search their food in the flocks of the meek animals and thus provoke men to a wild battle by their cruelty which is implanted by the might of God?

[11] Men had to invent artificial weapons to fight against the devouring beasts. By that he learned how to fight, kill and conquer,

but did he by that win anything to make his heart and mind nobler as God advised him?

[12] Now look, I very often thought about this subject and was not able to receive even a half satisfying solution from any wise person for this true sphinx's mystery. Everywhere it was said: 'The wise gods will know why they have allowed all this.'

[13] Yes, this is certainly so, but did men win anything by that for their heart and mind? Yes, for the hunting, fighting and waging of war they won a lot, and then also to give laws to rule and to be often as cruel as a hyena in their justice regarding those people who sinned against their laws. But for the rest, really not many good things appeared from the fact that they learned to fight – first against the wild animals and very soon after that also among each other.

[14] You are wise and powerful from the Spirit of God in you. Teach me now also in the right manner about this matter which seems very important to me.”

TABLE OF CONTENTS

1. THE LORD LET THE INDO-JEWS RETURN TO THEIR OWN COUNTRY	2
2. THE LORD RELATES ABOUT HIS TEMPTATION IN THE DESERT ..	4
THE LORD IN JESAIRA	
3. THE DEPARTURE FROM KIS TO JESAIRA	9
4. THE LORD AND THE POOR FISHERMAN	13
5. CONTEMPLATION IN THE EVENING	16
6. CONTACTING GOOD SPIRITS	19
7. EXPLANATION OF THE LORD ABOUT THE PLANET MARS	23
8. THE COURAGEOUS SKIPPER	28
9. THE NATURE OF THE BEYOND	31
10. THE ACTIVITY OF THE SOUL	34
11. THE ACTIVITY OF THE SPIRITS	36
12. THE MEANING OF THE PREDICTIONS OF THE LORD	38
13. THE HUMILITY OF THE WORKERS IN THE VINEYARD OF THE LORD	41
14. THE LORD VISITS THE POOR FISHERMEN OF THE BAY	44
15. THE FISHERMEN GREET THE LORD	48
16. LOVE, MEEKNESS AND PATIENCE ARE BETTER THAN JUSTIFIED ZEAL.....	51
17. THE LORD PREDICTS THE END OF HIS TIME ON EARTH	54
THE LORD CLOSE TO CAESAREA PHILIPPI	
18. THE TRIP FROM KIS TO MARCUS AT CAESAREA PHILIPPI	58
19. MARCUS GIVES NEWS ABOUT HIS SUCCESSFUL HEALINGS IN HIS BATH RESORT	60
20. THE DISCIPLES ASK THE LORD FOR THE REASON OF HIS JOY OVER THE NATURE	64
21. THE LORD AND THE 2 GREEKS	67
22. THE SPIRITUAL SEARCH OF THE GREEKS	71
23. THE GREEKS HAVE QUESTIONS ABOUT THE OMNISCIENCE OF THE LORD	74
24. THE OPINION OF THE GREEKS ABOUT THE ONLY TRUE GOD ..	77
25. THE TEACHING OF THE LORD ABOUT THE ONE, ONLY TRUE GOD	79

26.	THE GREEKS RECOGNIZE THE LORD. PURPOSE AND CAUSES OF SICKNESSES	81
27.	THE PRACTISE OF NEIGHORLY LOVE	84
28.	THE EXPERIENCES OF THE GREEK DOCTOR AND HIS TESTIMONY ABOUT THE LORD	87
29.	THE CONFESSION OF THE DOCTOR	90
30.	THE DISCUSSION BETWEEN THE ROMAN SUPREME JUDGE AND THE GREEK DOCTOR	93
31.	THE DOUBTS OF THE JUDGE	96
32.	THE HEALING BY FAITH OF THE REPENTED JUDGE	99
33.	THE HEALED ONES COME TO THE LORD	102
34.	THE LORD GIVES RULES OF CONDUCT FOR THE FAITHFUL ...	104
35.	THE HEAVYHEARTEDNESS OF THE ROMAN AT THE BEAUTIFUL VIEW	107
36.	THE WISH OF THE ROMAN	109
37.	THE ROMAN SPEAKS WITH HIS DECEASED FATHER	111
38.	THE LORD EXPLAINS ABOUT THE SITUATION IN THE BEYOND	115
39.	THE GUIDANCE OF THE HUMAN SOULS UNTO COMPLETION .	119
40.	THE LORD CALLS RAPHAEL TO EXPLAIN THE EXISTENCE OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD	122
41.	THE NATURE OF THE KINGDOM OF GOD	124
42.	THE NATURE OF RAPHAEL	126
43.	THE DOCTOR FINDS NO EXPLANATION FOR THE NATURE OF RAPHAEL	129
44.	EXISTENCE AND NON-EXISTENCE	131
45.	THE COUNTER-QUESTIONS OF THE DOCTOR	134
46.	THE NECESSITY TO VEIL THE MEMORY	135
47.	THE WISDOM OF THE LORD	137
48.	THE DOCTOR AND THE DISCIPLES ARE GRATEFUL FOR THE TEACHING	140
49.	THE GREATEST OBSTACLE FOR SPIRITUAL GROWTH	143
50.	HOW TO SAFE MATERIALISTIC SOULS	145
51.	RAPHAEL'S TEACHING	148
52.	ACCEPTING THE TEACHING OF THE LORD	150
53.	FALSE AND TRUE PROPHETS	152
54.	THE HEALING OF THE SICK MEN FROM JOPPE	154
55.	THE AMAZEMENT OF THE GREEKS ABOUT THE HEALTHY MEAL	157

56.	THE HEALED ONES AND THEIR SKIPPERS	158
57.	THE HEALED SKIPPER PROVES THE DIVINITY OF THE LORD .	160
58.	THE DOCTOR ASKS FOR THE MANNA IN THE DESERT	162
59.	RAPHAEL'S TEACHING ABOUT THE FEEDING OF ISRAEL IN THE DESERT	164
60.	THE PHENOMENON OF THE MIRAGE	166
61.	THE REASONS FOR THE SPIRITUAL SUPERIORITY OF THE GENTILES	170
62.	HOW THE JEWS ACCEPT THE REVELATIONS	172
63.	THE FISHERMEN FROM JOPPE ARE INVITED BY THE LORD FOR THE MEAL	176
64.	THE STORM AND ITS CORRESPONDING MEANING	180
65.	THE PRESENCE OF THE ANGELS WITH MEN	182
66.	THE FALL OF HEROD'S AGENTS	186
67.	THE RESCUE OF THE CHIEF	188
68.	THE CHIEF'S PLANS	191
69.	THE LORD IS AHEAD OF THE WISH OF THE HERODIANS	193
70.	THE CONVERSATION BETWEEN THE CAPTAIN AND THE CHIEF	195
71.	THE WISH OF THE CAPTAIN AND ITS FULFILLMENT	197
72.	CAPTAIN LEANDER BEFORE THE LORD	199
73.	THE GOOD INSIGHT AND INTENTION OF THE CHIEF	203
74.	THE DELIBERATION OF THE HERODIANS	206
75.	THE BEAUTIFL MORNING AT THE LAKE	208
76.	A CONVERSATION ABOUT THE MIGRATORY BIRDS	210
77.	THE DANGERS OF CEREMONIAL RELIGION AND CEREMONIAL PRAYER	212
78.	THE TRIAL OF THE HEARTLESS IN THE BEYOND	215
79.	RAPHAEL WITH THE HERODIANS	218
80.	RAPHAEL REPAIRS THE DAMAGED SHIP	220
81.	THE LORD WITH THE HERODIANS	222
82.	THE GUESTS LEAVE TO THEIR HOMES	225
83.	THE SUGGESTION OF THE ROMAN TO SPREAD THE LORD'S TEACHING AS FAST AS POSSIBLE	229
84.	THE RIGHT WAY TO SPREAD THE KINGDOM OF GOD FOR THE SPIRITUAL DEVELOPMENT OF MAN	231
85.	THE HEALED ROMAN JUDGE CONVERTS HIS FRIENDS	233
86.	RAPHAEL SAVES PERSIANS AND INDIANS	237

87.	THE LORD’S TRIP TO GENNESARET	239
88.	THE MEAL WITH EBAL	243
89.	THE ROMAN CAPTAIN AND HIS SOLDIERS DISTURB THE MEAL	246
90.	A WONDER OF THE LORD DISILLUSIONS THE ROMAN	249
91.	THE RESURRECTION OF THE FLESH	251
92.	THE PHILOSOPHICAL QUESTIONS OF THE CAPTAIN	254
93.	THE OBJECTIONS OF THE CAPTAIN AGAINST THE DIVINITY OF THE LORD	258
94.	THE CONTINUOUS EFFORTS OF THE LORD FOR THE PEOPLE .	260
95.	THE CAPTAIN ASKS FOR AN EXPLANATION ABOUT THE NATURE OF THE EARTH	263
96.	RAPHAEL AS A TEACHER IN ASTRONOMY	265
97.	RAPHAEL EXPLAINS THE RELATION OF THE PLANETS TO THE SUN	268
98.	THE CONDITIONS FOR RECEIVING WISDOM	271
99.	RAPHAEL EXPLAINS HIS POWER	174
100.	THE QUESTIONS OF THE CAPTAIN ABOUT THE KILLING OF ANIMALS	278